This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

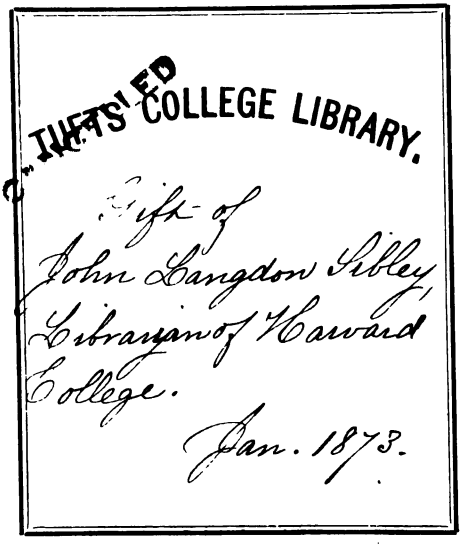
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

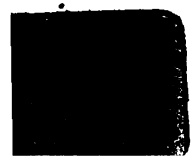
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.36.290



HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 067 367

Miss Julia Sumner
Dec. 1836.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN,

UPON A NEW PLAN;

COMBINING

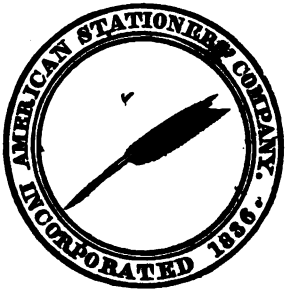
ABSTRACT RULES

WITH A

PROGRESSIVE SERIES OF PRACTICAL EXERCISES

BY CHARLES DEXTER CLEVELAND.

Improved Stereotype Edition.



BOSTON:
AMERICAN STATIONERS' COMPANY.
JOHN B. RUSSELL.
1836.

Educ T 918.36.290

HARVARD COLLEGE
Sept 19, 1929
LIBRARY

Tufts College

ENTERED according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1831,
BY CARTER, HENDEE, AND BABCOCK,
in the Clerk's office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

STEREOTYPED AT THE
LANCASTER TYPE AND STEREOTYPE FOUNDRY.

FIRST

LESSONS IN LATIN.

PRONUNCIATION.

Q. How is the Latin language pronounced?

A. As it is not known how the Romans pronounced it, each of the modern nations of Europe follows the rules of its own language. The English, therefore, pronounce the Latin according to the principles of the English language.

Q. What does the curve mark ˘ and what does the horizontal line ¯ over the vowels mean?

A. The curve mark ˘ over a vowel shows it to be short: the horizontal line ¯ shows it to be long.

Q. How do these marks regulate the pronunciation?

A. In words of three syllables or more than three, if the last syllable but one, which is called *the penult*, be long, the accent is upon it, as *amābam*, where the accent is upon the *ā:* but if *the penult* have the short accent over it, the syllable before it, which is called the *antepenult*, is accented, as *hŏmĭnis*, where the accent is on the first syllable.

Q. When the *penult* is accented, has its vowel the long or short sound?

A. When the *penult* is accented, its vowel has the long sound when it is followed by one consonant only, or by another vowel, as, *caput, rei, sermōnem;* but when it is followed by two consonants or the double consonant *x*, it has the short sound, as, *frondus, regnum, penna, respondens, buxus.*

Q. When the *antepenult* is accented, how is its vowel sounded?

A. When the *antepenult* is accented, its vowel has, generally, the short sound, as, *tempŏris, régĭbus.**

EXAMPLES TO BE PRONOUNCED AND EXPLAINED BY THE SCHOLAR.

Sermōnis,	Amavĕrim,	Fuērunt,	Indĭces,
Legebamĭni,	Capitĭbus,	Pennārum,	Donum,
Senectus,	Lapis,	Parentes,	Parentium.†
Bellum,			

LETTERS.

Q. How many letters are there in the Latin language

A. Twenty-five, which are the same as those in the English, with the exception of W, which the Latins do not use.

Q. How many of these are vowels?

A. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y,* each of which makes a distinct sound by itself. The other letters are called consonants, which do not make a perfect sound without the aid of a vowel.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

Q. How many sorts of words, or *Parts of Speech,* are there in the Latin language?

A. Nine: the *Noun,* the *Adjective,* the *Pronoun,* the *Verb,* the *Participle,* the *Adverb,* the *Preposition,* the *Interjection,* and the *Conjunction.*

---

* The instructer will explain the few exceptions to this rule.

† The penult *i* of *parentium* is not marked short, because it is a universal rule that 'one vowel before another vowel is short.'

NOUN.

Q. What is a *Noun?*

A. A *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing. Thus, *boy* is a *Noun*, because it is the name of a person; *school* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a place; and *book* is a *Noun*, as it is the name of a thing.

Q. How many kinds of nouns are there?

A. Two kinds—*proper* nouns, which are the names of persons or places, as, *Cicĕro*, *Rome;* and *common* nouns, which stand for whole kinds or sorts of things, as, *animal*, *man*, *tree*, *book*.

GENDER.

Q. What is *gender?*

A. *Gender* is the distinction of objects with regard to their sex.

Q. How many *genders* have nouns?

A. Properly speaking there are but two genders: the *masculine*, which is applied to names of men or male beings; and the *feminine*, which is applied to names of women, or female beings. But those nouns which are neither *masculine* nor *feminine*, are called *neuter;* and those which are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense, are called *common*. Therefore there may be said to be four genders: the *masculine*, the *feminine*, the *neuter*, and the *common*.

NUMBER.

Q. What is *number?*

A. *Number* is the distinction of objects, whether as one, or more than one.

Q. How many *numbers* has a noun?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which is used when a sin-

gle thing is spoken of; and the *plural* number, which is used when two things, or more than two things, are spoken of.

CASE.

Q. What are cases?

A. *Cases* are changes which are made upon the endings or terminations of nouns.

Q. How many *cases* has a Latin noun?

A. Six: the *nominative* case, the *genitive* case, the *dative* case, the *accusative* case, the *vocative* case, and the *ablative* case.

Q. What general rules can you give about some cases which are always alike?

A. First. The *dative* and *ablative* plural of all nouns in all declensions are alike.

Second. All nouns of the neuter gender have the *accusative* and *vocative* like the *nominative*, in both numbers; and in the plural number, these three cases, the *nominative*, the *accusative*, and the *vocative* always end in *a*.

Third. In all nouns of all declensions and genders, the *nominative* and *vocative* plural are the same.

DECLENSION.

Q. What is *declension?*

A. The *declension* of a noun is the repetition of all its different cases.

Q. How many different ways are there of varying or declining nouns?

A. Five: which are called the *first* declension, the *second* declension, the *third* declension, the *fourth* declension, and the *fifth* declension.

Q. How can you tell one declension from another?

A. By the ending of the *genitive* case, singular number. In the *first* declension the genitive singular ends in *æ*, in

he *second* declension it ends in *i*, in the *third* declension it ends in *is*, in the *fourth* declension it ends in *ús*, and in the *fifth* declension it ends in *ei*, as $\overset{1}{æ}$, $\overset{2}{i}$, $\overset{3}{is}$, $\overset{4}{ús}$, $\overset{5}{ei}$.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Q. In what does the *nominative* case of nouns of the first declension end?

A. Nouns of the *first* declension end in *a*, in the nominative, excepting a few nouns derived from the Greek.

Q. What is the gender of the nouns of this declension?

A. Feminine gender.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the first declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *æ* dipthong.

Q. What is a dipthong?

A. The union of two vowels so as to make but one sound The dipthong *æ* is pronounced like *e*.

Decline Penna, *a pen*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nominative,	pennà,	*a pen,*
Genitive,	pennæ,	*of a pen,*
Dative,	pennæ,	*to* or *for a pen,*
Accusative,	pennam,	*a pen,*
Vocative,	penna,	*O pen,*
Ablative,	pennâ,	*with, from, in,* or *by a pen.*

Plural number.

Nominative,	pennæ,	*pens,*
Genitive,	pennārum,	*of pens,*
Dative,	pennis,	*to* or *for pens,*
Accusative,	pennas,	*pens,*
Vocative,	pennæ,	*O pens,*
Ablative,	pennis,	*with, from, in,* or *by pens.*

Q. In how many cases can you find *penna?* What cases are they, and what do they mean?

Q. In how many places can you make *pennæ?* What are they? What their meanings?

Q. In how many places can you make *pennis?* Where *pennam?* Where *pennārum?* Where *pennas?*

LATIN EXAMPLES TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Aræ,	Horam,	Rosæ,	Terra,
Bestia,	Luna,	Sagittam,	Undas,
Citharārum,	Oris,	Scholis,	Viārum,
Epistŏlis,	Palpĕbras,	Speluncæ,	Victĭmis,
Umbræ,	Satўram,	Muscas,	Litĕris.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES TO BE RENDERED INTO LATIN.

a Girl,	in Chains,	of the Table,
O Victim,	of Plants,	with the Lyre,
by Poets,	Battles,	Life,
in the Sand,	to Envy,	by a Fable,
by Slander,	for Wings,	to Punishment.

DECLENSION OF SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS DERIVED FROM THE GREEK.

Alŏë, *the aloe*, or *aloes tree*.

Nom.	Alŏe,
Gen.	Alŏes,
Dat.	Alŏæ,
Acc.	Alŏen,
Voc.	Alŏe,
Abl.	Alŏe.

Æněas, *Æneas*, the name of a man.

Nom.	Æněas,
Gen.	Æněæ,
Dat.	Æněæ,
Acc.	Æněam, or Æněan,
Voc.	Æněa,
Abl.	Æněâ.

In the plural like *penna*.

Anchīses, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Nom.	Anchīses,
Gen.	Anchīsæ,
Dat.	Anchīsæ,
Acc.	Anchīsen,
Voc.	Anchīse or Anchīsa,
Abl.	Anchīse or Anchīsâ

Penelŏpe, *Penelŏpe*, the name of a woman.

Nom.	Penelŏpe,
Gen.	Penelŏpes,
Dat.	Penelŏpæ,
Acc.	Penelŏpen,
Voc.	Penelŏpe,
Abl.	Penelŏpe.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Part 1*st*, *Latin and English.*

Ara, *an altar.*
Bestia, *a beast.*
Cithăra, *a harp.*
Epistŏla, *an epistle*, or *letter.*
Hora, *an hour.*
Litĕra, *a letter.*
Luna, *the moon.*
Musca, *a fly.*
Ora, *a coast.*
Palpĕbra, *the eyelid.*
Rosa, *a rose.*
Sagitta, *an arrow.*
Satўra, *a satire.*
Schola, *a school.*
Spelunca, *a cave.*
Terra, *the earth.*
Unda, *a wave.*
Via, *a way.*
Victĭma, *a victim.*
Umbra, *a shadow.*

Part 2*d*, *English and Latin.*

a Battle, *pugna.*
a Chain, *catēna.*
Envy, *invidia.*
a Fable, *fabŭla.*
a Girl, *puella.*
Life, *vita.*
a Lyre, *lyra.*
a Plant, *planta.*
a Poet, *pœ̆ta.*
Punishment, *pœna.*
Sand, *arēna.*
Slander, *calumnia.*
a Table, *tabŭla.*
a Victim, *victĭma.*
a Wing, *ala.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Second Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *i*.

Q. In what do the *nominatives* singular of all nouns of this declension end?

A. They end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *um*.

Q. Which of these are of the neuter gender?

A. Those which end in *um*.

Q. Of what gender are the rest?

A. The rest of the nouns, which end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us* are of the masculine gender.

Decline Gener, *a son-in-law*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	gener,	*a son-in-law*,
Gen.	genĕri,	*of a son-in-law*,
Dat.	genĕro,	*to* or *for a son-in-law*,
Acc.	genĕrum,	*a son-in-law*,
Voc.	gener,	*O son-in-law*,
Abl.	genĕro, *with, from, in* or *by a son-in-law.*	

Plural number.

Nom.	genĕri,	*sons-in-law*,
Gen.	generōrum,	*of sons-in-law*,
Dat.	genĕris,	*to* or *for sons-in-law*,
Acc.	genĕros,	*sons-in-law*,
Voc.	genĕri,	*O sons-in-law*,
Abl.	genĕris, *with, from, in* or *by sons-in-law.*	

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Socĕri,	Vir,	Viris,
Furcifĕros,	Presbyterōrum,	Puĕro.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive: thus,

Ager, *a field*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	ager,	*a field,*
Gen.	agri,	*of a field,*
Dat.	agro,	*to* or *for a field,*
Acc.	agrum,	*a field,*
Voc.	ager,	*O field,*
Abl.	agro,	*with, from, in* or *by a field.*

Plural number.

Nom.	agri,	*fields,*
Gen.	agrōrum,	*of fields,*
Dat.	agris,	*to* or *for fields,*
Acc.	agros,	*fields,*
Voc.	agri,	*O fields,*
Abl.	agris,	*with, from, in* or *by fields.*

LATIN EXAMPLES

Fabrōrum,	Colŭbros,	Arbĭtris,
Magistri,	Ministro,	Aprum,
Alexandro,	Libri,	Auster.

Decline Domĭnus, *a lord*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	domĭnus,	*a lord,*
Gen.	domĭni,	*of a lord,*
Dat.	domĭno,	*to* or *for a lord,*
Acc.	domĭnum,	*a lord,*
Voc.	domĭne,	*O lord,*
Abl.	domĭno,	*with, from, in* or *by a lord*

Plural number.

Nom.	domĭni,	*lords,*
Gen.	dominōrum,	*of lords,*
Dat.	domĭnis,	*to* or *for lords,*
Acc.	domĭnos,	*lords,*
Voc.	domĭni,	*O lords,*
Abl.	domĭnis,	*with, from, in* or *by lords.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Agni,	Pontus,	Thesaurum,
Rivos,	Nimbos,	Ursōrum,
Ocŭlis,	Fluvio,	Muris,
Popŭlum,	Philosŏphi,	Scopŭle.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Buffaloes,	for a Bushel,	a Hat,
in Sleep,	to a Rock,	from the Arm,
of a Slave,	O Messengers,	with the Oars,
O Master,	of an Oven,	in Autumn.

Decline Regnum, *a kingdom*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	regnum,	*a kingdom,*
Gen.	regni,	*of a kingdom,*
Dat.	regno,	*to* or *for a kingdom,*
Acc.	regnum,	*a kingdom,*
Voc.	regnum,	*O kingdom,*
Abl.	regno,	*with, from, in* or *by a kingdom.*

Plural number.

Nom.	regna,	*kingdoms,*
Gen.	regnōrum,	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	regnis,	*to* or *for kingdoms*
Acc.	regna,	*kingdoms*
Voc.	regna,	*O kingdoms,*
Abl.	regnis,	*with, from, in* or *by kingdoms.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Antro,	Imperia,	Vincŭla,	Venēnum,
Delūbri,	Labiōrum,	Tecto,	Castra,
Scutum,	Templis,	Sigillum,	Bellōrum.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

for Judgment,	of Slavery,	in Wars,
with a Gift,	the Doors,	for Assistance,
in the Bosom,	O Destruction,	in Chains,
Vices,	of Dreams,	to the Town.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

1. Proper names ending in *ius*, form the vocative, by dropping *us*, as Virgilius, voc. Virgĭli; Horatius, Horāti. So *filius*, a son, has *fili*.

2. *Deus*, a god, has *deus* in the vocative, and in the plural it has *dii* and *diis* oftener than *dei* and *deis*.

3. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has generally *mi* in the vocative.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.

Agnus, *a lamb.*
Alexander, *Alexander.*
Antrum, *a cave.*
Aper, *a wild boar.*
Arbĭter, *a judge.*
Auster, *the south wind.*
Bellum, *war.*
Castrum, *a castle.*
Colŭber, *a snake.*
Delūbrum, *a temple.*
Faber, *a workman.*
Fluvius, *a river.*
Furcĭfer, *a villain.*
Imperium, *an empire.*
Labium, *a lip.*
Liber, *a book.*
Magister, *a master.*
Minister, *a servant.*
Murus, *a wall.*
Nimbus, *a cloud.*
Ocŭlus, *the eye.*
Philosŏphus, *a philosopher.*
Pontus, *the sea.*
Popŭlus, *the people.*
Presbўter, *an elder.*
Puer, *a boy.*
Rivus, *a rivulet.*
Scopŭlus, *a rock.*
Scutum, *a shield.*
Sigillum, *a seal.*
Socer, *a father-in-law.*
Tectum, *a roof.*
Templum, *a temple.*
Thesaurus, *a treasure.*
Ursus, *a bear.*
Venēnum, *poison.*
Vincŭlum, *a chain.*
Vir, *a man.*

Part 2d, English and Latin

the Arm, *lacertus.*
Assistance, *auxilium.*
Autumn, *autumnus.*
the Bosom, *gremium.*
a Buffalo, *urus.*
a Bushel, *modius.*
a Chain, *vincŭlum.*
Destruction, *exitium.*
a Door, *ostium.*
a Dream, *somnium*
a Gift, *donum.*
a Hat, *pileus.*
Judgment, *judicium.*
a Master, *herus.*
a Messenger, *nuntius.*
an Oar, *remus.*
an Oven, *furnus.*
a Rock, *scopŭlus.*
a Slave, *servus.*
Slavery, *servitium.*
Sleep, *somnus.*
a Town, *oppĭdum.*
Vice, *vitium.*
War, *bellum.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How do you distinguish nouns of the Third Declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *is*.

NOUNS ENDING IN *O*:

Decline Sermo, *a speech*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Sermo,	*a speech*,
Gen.	Sermōnis,	*of a speech*,
Dat.	Sermōni,	*to* or *for a speech*,
Acc.	Sermōnem,	*a speech*,
Voc.	Sermo,	*O speech*,
Abl.	Sermōne,	*from, in, by* or *with a speech*.

Plural number.

Nom.	Sermōnes,	*speeches*,
Gen.	Sermōnum,	*of speeches*,
Dat.	Sermonĭbus,	*to* or *for speeches*,
Acc.	Sermōnes,	*speeches*,
Voc.	Sermōnes,	*O speeches*,
Abl.	Sermonĭbus,	*from, in, by* or *with speeches*.

Q. How is the genitive of *Sermo* formed?

A. By adding *nis* to the nominative.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Latrōnes,	Statiōni,	Rebelliōnes,
Bubo,	Conciōnum,	Dictionĭbus,
Regiōne,	Pavōnem,	Lectiōne,
Opinionĭbus,	Seditiōnis,	Religiōni,

Decline Arundo, *a reed*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Arundo,	*a reed,*
Gen.	Arundĭnis,	*of a reed,*
Dat.	Arundĭni,	*to* or *for a reed,*
Acc.	Arundĭnem,	*a reed,*
Voc.	Arundo,	*O reed,*
Abl.	Arundĭne,	*from, by* or *with a reed.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Arundĭnes,	*reeds,*
Gen.	Arundĭnum,	*of reeds,*
Dat.	Arundinĭbus,	*to* or *for reeds,*
Acc.	Arundĭnes,	*reeds,*
Voc.	Arundĭnes,	*O reeds,*
Abl.	Arundinĭbus,	*from, by* or *with reeds.*

Q. How is the genitive of Arundo formed?

A. By changing *o* into *ĭnis.*

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

Swallows,	for Health,	*on Hinges,
in Darkness,	of Virgins,	of a Spade,
with Fear,	Hail,	O Virgin.

NOUNS ENDING IN *A.*

Q. Of what gender are all nouns ending in *a*, of the third declension?

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *tis* to the nominative; as *dogma*, genitive *dogmătis.*

---

* The English preposition *on* is rendered by the ablative.

Decline Dogma, *an opinion*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Dogma,	*an opinion,*
Gen.	Dogmătis,	*of an opinion,*
Dat.	Dogmăti,	*to* or *for an opinion,*
Acc.	Dogma,	*an opinion,*
Voc.	Dogma,	*O opinion,*
Abl.	Dogmăte,	*with, from* or *by an opinion.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Dogmăta,	*opinions,*
Gen.	Dogmătum,	*of opinions,*
Dat.	Dogmatĭbus,	*to* or *for opinions,*
Acc.	Dogmăta,	*opinions,*
Voc.	Dogmăta,	*O opinions,*
Abl.	Dogmatĭbus,	*with, from* or *by opinions.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Poematĭbus,	Poemăti,	Schemăta,
Diplōma,	Numismătis,	Strategematĭbus.
Schemăte,	Ænigmătum,	

NOUNS ENDING IN *E.*

Q. Of what gender is this class of nouns?

A. Nouns which end in *e* are of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By changing *e* into *is*, as Nom. *sedīle*, Gen. *sedīlis.*

Decline Sedīle, *a seat*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Sedīle,	*a seat,*
Gen.	Sedīlis,	*of a seat,*
Dat.	Sedīli,	*to* or *for a seat,*

Acc.	Sedīle,	*a seat,*
Voc.	Sedīle,	*O seat,*
Abl.	Sedīli,	*with, from, in* or *by a seat.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Sedilia,	*seats,*
Gen.	Sedilium,	*of seats,*
Dat.	Sedilĭbus,	*to* or *for seats,*
Acc.	Sedilia,	*seats,*
Voc.	Sedilia,	*O seats,*
Abl.	Sedilĭbus,	*with, from, in* or *by seats.*

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

O Shield, with Towels, Stables,
in a Couch, of a Room, in the Sheep-fold.

NOUNS ENDING IN *MEN.*

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *men?*

A. Of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By changing *en* into *ĭnis,* as *flumen, flumĭnis*

Decline Flumen, *a river,* neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Flumen,	*a river,*
Gen.	Flumĭnis,	*of a river,*
Dat.	Flumĭni,	*to* or *for a river,*
Acc	Flumen,	*a river,*
Voc.	Flumen,	*O river,*
Abl.	Flumĭne,	*with, from, in* or *by a river.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Flumĭna,	*rivers,*
Gen.	Flumĭnum,	*of rivers,*
Dat.	Fluminĭbus,	*to* or *for rivers,*

Acc.	Flumĭna,	*rivers,*
Voc.	Flumĭna,	*O rivers,*
Abl.	Fluminĭbus,	*with, from, in* or *by rivers.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Foraminĭbus,	Lumĭni,	Lumĭne,
Crimen,	Agmĭna,	Ominĭbus,
Cacumĭnis,	Nomĭnum,	Carmĭnis.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ER* AND *OR*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns, ending in *er* and *or*?

A. Generally masculine, though some are of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. By adding *is* to the nominative, as *dolor, dolōris.*

Decline Dolor, *pain*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Dolor,	*pain,*
Gen.	Dolōris,	*of pain,*
Dat.	Dolōri,	*to* or *for pain,*
Acc.	Dolōrem,	*pain,*
Voc.	Dolor,	*O pain,*
Abl.	Dolōre,	*with, from* or *by pain.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Dolōres,	*pains,*
Gen.	Dolōrum,	*of pains,*
Dat.	Dolorĭbus,	*to* or *for pains,*
Acc.	Dolōres,	*pains,*
Voc.	Dolōres,	*O pains,*
Abl.	Dolorĭbus,	*with, from* or *by pains.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Rumōres,	Debitorĭbus,	Pastorĭbus,
Pudor,	Sopōre,	Aggĕris,
Pastōris,	Rumōrum,	Splendōre,
Lectōrem,	Honōri,	Colōri.

NOUNS ENDING IN *AS.*

Q. Of what gender are these nouns?

A. Feminine gender.

Q. How do they form their genitive?

A. By changing *s* into *tis;* as *ætas, ætātis, an age.*

Decline Ætas, *an age,* feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Ætas,	*an age,*
Gen.	Ætātis,	*of an age,*
Dat.	Ætāti,	*to* or *for an age,*
Acc.	Ætātem,	*an age,*
Voc.	Ætas,	*O age,*
Abl.	Ætāte,	*with, in* or *by an age.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Ætātes,	*agès,*
Gen.	Ætātûm,	*of ages,*
Dat.	Ætatĭbus,	*to* or *for ages,*
Acc.	Ætātes,	*ages,*
Voc.	Ætātes,	*O ages,*
Abl.	Ætatĭbus,	*with, in* or *by ages.*

Q. How do nouns ending in *as* and *ns* form the genitive plural?

A. They form it regularly in *ium;* as *ætātes, ætatium: parentes, parentium.* But generally the *i* is omitted, as *parentes, parentûm: ætātes, ætātûm.*

Q. What does the circumflex mark ^ over the *u* mean?

A. That the two syllables, *ium*, are contracted into one syllable, *ûm*.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in the Summer,	for Power,	of the Will,
with Pleasures,	of Truth,	of Pleasures.

NOUNS ENDING IN *ES*.

Q. How do these nouns form the genitive?

A. Commonly by changing *es* into *is*, as *rupes, rupis*. but there are very many nouns ending in *es*, that form the genitive differently.

Decline Rupes, *a rock*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Rupes,	*a rock,*
Gen.	Rupis,	*of a rock,*
Dat.	Rupi,	*to* or *for a rock,*
Acc.	Rupem,	*a rock,*
Voc.	Rupes,	*O rock,*
Abl.	Rupe,	*with, by* or *on a rock.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Rupes,	*rocks,*
Gen.	Rupium,	*of rocks,*
Dat.	Rupĭbus,	*to* or *for rocks,*
Acc.	Rupes,	*rocks,*
Voc.	Rupes,	*O rocks,*
Abl.	Rupĭbus,	*with, by* or *on rocks.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Clade,	Nubium,	Famis,
Struĭbus,	Vulpes,	Palumbem.
Sudi,		

Q. How do some other nouns ending in *es* form the genitive?

A. By changing *es* into *ĭtis*, as ales, *a bird*, gen. alĭtis, *of a bird;* miles, *a soldier;* gen. milĭtis, *of a soldier.*

NOUNS ENDING IN *IS.*

Q. What is the genitive of nouns in *is?*

A. The same as the nominative

Q. How are they declined?

A. Like *rupes*, which has been declined before

Decline Vitis, *a vine*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Vitis,	*a vine,*
Gen.	Vitis,	*of a vine,*
Dat.	Viti,	*to* or *for a vine,*
Acc.	Vitem,	*a vine,*
Voc.	Vitis,	*O vine,*
Abl.	Vite,	*with, from, in* or *by a vine.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Vites,	*vines,*
Gen.	Vitium,	*of vines,*
Dat.	Vitĭbus,	*to* or *for vines,*
Acc.	Vites,	*vines,*
Voc.	Vites,	*O vines,*
Abl.	Vitĭbus,	*with, from, in* or *by vines.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Apium,	Colli,	Vallis,
Classĭbus,	Ense,	Unguem,
Mense,	Vestium,	

NOUNS ENDING IN *US.*

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us?*

A. They are generally of the neuter gender.

Q. How do they form the genitive?

A. They form it variously. Some change *us* into *ŏris*, as corpus, *a body;* gen. corpŏris, *of a body*. Others change *us* into *ĕris*, as, munus, *a gift;* gen. muněris, *of a gift*. And others change *s* into *dis* or *tis;* as pecus, *a sheep;* gen. pecŭdis, *of a sheep:* servĭtus, *slavery;* gen. servitūtis, *of slavery*.

Decline Opus, *a work*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Opus,	*a work*,
Gen.	Opĕris,	*of a work*,
Dat.	Opĕri,	*to* or *for a work*,
Acc.	Opus,	*a work*,
Voc.	Opus,	*O work*,
Abl.	Opĕre,	*with, from*, or *by a work*.

Plural number.

Nom.	Opĕra,	*works*,
Gen.	Opĕrum,	*of works*,
Dat.	Operĭbus,	*to* or *for works*,
Acc.	Opĕra,	*works*,
Voc.	Opĕra,	*O works*,
Abl.	Operĭbus,	*with, from*, or *by works*.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Muněre,	Siděri,	Oněrum,
Sidus,	Vulnerĭbus,	Sceléra.
Funĕris,	Ponděre,	

NOUNS ENDING IN *NS*, *RS*, *PS*, AND *BS*.

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *s* into *is* or *tis;* as trabs, *a beam;* gen. trabis, *of a beam;* pars, *a part;* gen. partis, *of a part*.

Decline Parens, *a parent*, common gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Parens,	*a parent,*
Gen.	Parentis,	*of a parent,*
Dat.	Parenti,	*to* or *for a parent,*
Acc.	Parentem,	*a parent,*
Voc.	Parens,	*O parent,*
Abl.	Parente,	*with, from* or *by a parent.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Parentes,	*parents,*
Gen.	Parentûm,	*of parents,*
Dat.	Parentĭbus,	*to* or *for parents,*
Acc.	Parentes,	*parents,*
Voc.	Parentes,	*O parents,*
Abl.	Parentĭbus,	*with, from* or *by parents.*

LATIN EXAMPLES

Dente,	Fontĭbus,	Pontis,
Sēpem,	Rudentis,	Fons.
Montium,	Serpenti,	

NOUNS ENDING IN *T.*

Q. Is this a large class of nouns?

A. There is but one *simple* noun in T in the Latin language, which is of the neuter gender.

Decline it.

Singular number.

Nom.	Caput,	*a head,*
Gen.	Capĭtis,	*of a head,*
Dat.	Capĭti,	*to* or *for a head,*
Acc.	Caput,	*a head,*
Voc.	Caput,	*O head,*
Abl.	Capĭte,	*with, from* or *by a head.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Capĭta,	*heads,*
Gen.	Capĭtum,	*of heads,*
Dat.	Capitĭbus,	*to* or *for heads,*
Acc.	Capĭta,	*heads,*
Voc.	Capĭta,	*O heads,*
Abl.	Capitĭbus,	*with, from* or *by heads.*

NOUNS ENDING IN *X.*

Q. How is the genitive of these nouns formed?

A. By changing *x* into *cis*, as lux, *light;* gen. lucis, *of light.*

Decline Vox, *the voice,* feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Vox,	*the voice,*
Gen.	Vocis,	*of the voice,*
Dat.	Voci,	*to* or *for the voice,*
Acc.	Vocem,	*the voice,*
Voc.	Vox,	*O voice,*
Abl.	Voce,	*with, from* or *by the voice.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Voces,	*voices,*
Gen.	Vocum,	*of voices,*
Dat.	Vocĭbus,	*to* or *for voices,*
Acc.	Voces,	*voices,*
Voc.	Voces,	*O voices,*
Abl.	Vocĭbus,	*with, from* or *by voices.*

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Pacis,	Salĭci,	Mercem,
Cervĭcem,	Face,	Nuces,
Radicĭbus,	Cornĭcum,	Radĭce.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Part 1*st, Latin and English.*

Ænigma, neut. *a riddle.*
Agger, masc. *a rampart.*
Agmen, neut. *an army.*
Apis, fem. *a bee.*
Bubo, masc. *an owl.*
Cacūmen, neut. *the top.*
Carmen, neut. *a song.*
Cervix, fem. *the neck.*
Clades, fem. *a defeat.*
Classis, fem. *a fleet.*
Collis, masc. *a hill.*
Color, masc. *a colour.*
Concio, fem. *an assembly.*
Cornix, fem. *a crow.*
Crimen, neut. *a crime.*
Debĭtor, masc. *a debtor.*
Dens, masc. *a tooth.*
Dictio, fem. *a word.*
Diplōma, neut. *a charter.*
Ensis, masc. *a sword.*
Fames, fem. *hunger.*
Fax, fem. *a torch.*
Fons, masc. *a well.*
Forāmen, neut. *a hole.*
Funus, neut. *a funeral.*
Honor, masc. *honour.*
Latro, masc. *a robber.*
Lectio, fem. *a lesson.*
Lector, masc. *a reader.*
Lumen, neut. *light.*
Mensis, masc. *a month.*
Merx, fem. *merchandise.*
Mons, masc. *a mountain.*
Munus, neut. *a gift.*
Nomen, neut. *a name.*
Nubes, fem. *a cloud.*
Numisma, neut. *a coin.*
Nux, fem. *a nut.*
Omen, neut. *an omen.*
Onus, neut. *a burden.*
Opinio, fem. *an opinion.*
Palumbes, com. *a pigeon.*
Pastor, masc. *a shepherd.*
Pavo, masc. *a peacock.*
Pax, fem. *peace.*
Poēma, neut. *a poem.*
Pondus, neut. *a weight.*
Pons, masc. *a bridge.*
Pudor, masc. *shame.*
Radix, fem. *a root.*
Rebellio, fem. *a rebellion.*
Regio, fem. *a country.*
Religio, fem. *religion.*
Rudens, com. *a cable.*
Rumor, masc. *a report.*
Salix, fem. *a willow.*
Scelus, neut. *a crime.*
Schema, neut. *a scheme.*
Seditio, fem. *a mutiny.*
Seps, fem. *a hedge.*
Serpens, com. *a serpent.*
Sidus, neut. *a star.*
Sopor, masc. *sleep.*
Splendor, masc. *brightness.*
Statio, fem. *a station.*
Strategēma, neut. *an artifice.*
Strues, fem. *a heap.*
Sudes, fem. *a stake.*
Unguis, masc. *a nail.*
Vallis, fem. *a valley.*
Vestis, fem. *a garment.*
Vulnus, neut. *a wound.*
Vulpes, fem. *a fox.*

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Part 2d, English and Latin.

a Couch, *cubīle*, neut.
Darkness, *calīgo*, fem.
Fear, *formīdo*, fem.
Hail, *grando*, fem.
Health, *valetūdo*, fem.
a Hinge, *cardo*, masc.
Pleasure, *voluptas*, fem.
Power, *potestas*, fem.
a Room, *conclāve*, neut.
a Sheep-fold, *ovīle*, neut.
a Shield, *ancīle*, neut.
a Spade, *ligo*, masc.
a Stable, *equīle*, neut.
Summer, *æstas*, fem.
a Swallow, *hirundo*, fem.
a Towel, *mantīle*, neut.
Truth, *veritas*, fem.
a Virgin, *virgo*, fem.
Will, *voluntas*, fem.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what syllables do the nominatives of nouns of the Fourth Declension end?

A. In *us* and *u*.

Q. How can you tell a noun of the *fourth* declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *ûs*.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *us*?

A. Masculine gender.

Q. Of what gender are nouns ending in *u*?

A. Of the neuter gender, and in the singular number they are not declined.

Q. What do you mean by not being declined?

A. That all the six cases are the same.

Decline Fructus, *fruit*, masculine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Fructus,	*fruit*,
Gen	Fructûs,	*of fruit*,
Dat.	Fructui,	*to* or *for fruit*,
Acc.	Fructum,	*fruit*,
Voc.	Fructus,	*O fruit*,
Abl.	Fructu,	*with*, *from* or *by fruit*.

Plural number.

Nom.	Fructus,	*fruits*,
Gen.	Fructuum,	*of fruits*,
Dat.	Fructĭbus,	*to* or *for fruits*,
Acc.	Fructus,	*fruits*,
Voc.	Fructus,	*O fruits*,
Abl.	Fructĭbus,	*with*, *from* or *by fruits*.

LATIN EXAMPLES.

Risu,	Venātu,	Gemĭtus,
Ictĭbus,	Sumptum,	Eventu,
Fluctui,	Motuum,	Exercĭtûs.

ENGLISH EXAMPLES.

in a Chariot,	Expenses,	for Gain,
to a Nod,	in Assemblies,	with Groans,
of a Complaint,	Singing,	with Success.

Decline Cornu, *a horn*, neuter gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Cornu,	*a horn,*
Gen.	Cornu,	*of a horn,*
Dat.	Cornu,	*to* or *for a horn,*
Acc.	Cornu,	*a horn,*
Voc.	Cornu,	*O horn,*
Abl.	Cornu,	*with, by* or *in a horn.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Cornua,	*horns,*
Gen.	Cornuum,	*of horns,*
Dat.	Cornĭbus,	*to* or *for horns,*
Acc.	Cornua,	*horns,*
Voc.	Cornua,	*O horns,*
Abl.	Cornĭbus,	*with, by* or *in horns.*

Decline Domus, *a house*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Domus,	*a house,*
Gen.	Domûs *or* domi,	*of a house,*
Dat.	Domui *or* domo,	*to* or *for a house,*
Acc.	Domum,	*a house,*
Voc.	Domus,	*O house,*
Abl.	Domo,	*with, from, in* or *by a house*

Plural number.

Nom.	Domus,	*houses,*
Gen.	Domōrum *or* domuum,	*of houses,*
Dat.	Domĭbus,	*to* or *for houses,*
Acc.	Domos *or* domus,	*houses,*
Voc.	Domus,	*O houses,*
Abl.	Domĭbus,	*with, from, in* or *by houses.*

Q. What is there peculiar to Domus?

A. It is both of the *second* and *fourth* declensions; that is, it is declined like nouns of each of these declensions.

VOCABULARY OF NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Part 1st, Latin and English.	*Part 2d, English and Latin.*
Eventus, masc. *an event.*	an Assembly, *cœtus*, masc.
Exercĭtus, masc. *an army.*	a Chariot, *currus*, masc.
Fluctus, masc. *a wave.*	a Complaint, *questus*, masc.
Gemĭtus, masc. *a groan.*	Expense, *sumptus*, masc.
Ictus, masc. *a stroke.*	Gain, *quæstus*, masc.
Motus, masc. *a motion.*	a Groan, *gemĭtus*, masc.
Risus, masc. *laughter.*	a Nod, *nutus*, masc.
Sumptus, masc. *expense.*	Singing, *cantus*, masc.
Venātus, masc. *hunting.*	Success, *successus*, masc.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Q. In what do the nominatives of nouns of the Fifth Declension end?

A. They end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

Q. How do you distinguish a noun of this declension?

A. By the genitive singular ending in *ei*.

Decline Res, *a thing*, feminine gender.

Singular number.

Nom.	Res,	*a thing*,
Gen.	Rēi,	*of a thing*,
Dat.	Rēi,	*to* or *for a thing*,
Acc.	Rem,	*a thing*,
Voc.	Res,	*O thing*,
Abl.	Re,	*from*, *with* or *by a thing*.

Plural number.

Nom.	Res,	*things*,
Gen.	Rērum,	*of things*,
Dat.	Rēbus,	*to* or *for things*,
Acc.	Res,	*things*,
Voc.	Res,	*O things*,
Abl.	Rēbus,	*with*, *from* or *by things*.

Q. In how many places can you make *res?* and what places are they? In how many *rēi?* in how many *rēbus?*

ADJECTIVES.

Q. What is an adjective?

A. An adjective is a word which is always joined to some noun, to define or describe it; as a *good* boy, a *wise* man, a *swift* horse. Here the words *good*, *wise* and *swift* are adjectives, because they give the character of the nouns to which they are joined.

Q. Into how many classes may adjectives be divided?

A. Into two classes; those of the first and second declension, and those of the third declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the first and second declension declined, or varied?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the *second* declension, as *dominus;* the feminine is declined like a feminine noun of the *first* declension, as *penna;* and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, as *regnum.*

Decline Bonus, *good.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Bonus,	bona,	bonum,
Gen.	Boni,	bonæ,	boni,
Dat.	Bono,	bonæ,	bono,
Acc.	Bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
Voc.	Bone,	bona,	bonum,
Abl.	Bono,	bonâ,	bono.

Plural number.

Nom.	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
Gen.	Bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum,
Dat.	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
Acc.	Bonos,	bonas,	bona,
Voc.	Boni,	bonæ,	bona,
Abl.	Bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

Q. Why are the endings of adjectives changed in this manner?

A. In order to agree with the nouns to which they are joined, in gender, number and case.

Declension of the *masculine* gender of *bonus*, joined to *vir*, 'a man.'

Singular number.

Nom.	Bonus vir,	*a good man,*
Gen.	Boni viri,	*of a good man,*
Dat.	Bono viro,	*to* or *for a good man,*
Acc.	Bonum virum,	*a good man,*
Voc.	Bone vir,	*O good man,*
Abl.	Bono viro,	*with a good man.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Boni viri,	*good men,*
Gen.	Bonōrum virōrum,	*of good men,*
Dat.	Bonis viris,	*to* or *for good men,*
Acc.	Bonos viros,	*good men,*
Voc.	Boni viri,	*O good men,*
Abl.	Bonis viris,	*with good men.*

Declension of the *feminine* of *bonus*, to agree with *penna.*

Singular number.

Nom.	Bona penna,	*a good pen,*
Gen.	Bonæ pennæ,	*of a good pen,*
Dat.	Bonæ pennæ,	*to* or *for a good pen,*
Acc.	Bonam pennam,	*a good pen,*
Voc.	Bona penna,	*O good pen,*
Abl.	Bonâ pennâ,	*with a good pen.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Bonæ pennæ,	*good pens,*
Gen.	Bonārum pennārum,	*of good pens,*
Dat.	Bonis pennis,	*to* or *for good pens,*

Acc.	Bonas pennas,	*good pens,*
Voc.	Bonæ pennæ,	*O good pens,*
Abl.	Bonis pennis.	*with good pens,*

Declension of the *neuter* gender of *bonus,* in all its cases, to agree with *negotium,* which also is *neuter.*

Singular number.

Nom.	Bonum negotium,	*a good thing,*
Gen.	Boni negotii,	*of a good thing,*
Dat.	Bono negotio,	*to* or *for a good thing,*
Acc.	Bonum negotium,	*a good thing,*
Voc.	Bonum negotium,	*O good thing,*
Abl.	Bono negotio,	*with a good thing.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Bona negotia,	*good things,*
Gen.	Bonōrum negotiōrum,	*of good things,*
Dat.	Bonis negotiis,	*to* or *for good things,*
Acc.	Bona negotia,	*good things,*
Voc.	Bona negotia,	*O good things,*
Abl.	Bonis negotiis,	*with good things.*

[*Let rule 2d now be committed to memory by the pupil.**]

Examples of adjectives of the first and second declension agreeing with their substantives. [The vocabulary is at the end of the pronouns.]

Carus amīcus,	Propria nomĭna,
Formōsa filia,	Divinārum legum,
Pretiōsum aurum,	Superbos pavōnes,
Fidi servi,	Ultĭmam spem,
Bellæ fœmĭnæ,	Caros amīcos,
Pretiōso auro,	Fidis servis.
Alexandrum magnum,	

* The pupil cannot fail now to understand the rule, "an adjective agrees with its substantive in *gender, number* and *case.*"

Q. What other adjectives are there of the first and second declension?

A. Some of the first and second declension end in *er*.

Declension of Tener, *tender*, which belongs to this class.

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Tener,	tenĕra,	tenĕrum,
Gen.	Tenĕri,*	tenĕræ,	tenĕri,
Dat.	Tenĕro,	tenĕræ,	tenĕro,
Acc.	Tenĕrum,	tenĕram,	tenĕrum,
Voc.	Tener,	tenĕra,	tenĕrum,
Abl.	Tenĕro,	tenĕrâ,	tenĕro.

Plural number.

Nom.	Tenĕri,	tenĕræ,	tenĕra,
Gen.	Tenerōrum,	tenerārum,	tenerōrum,
Dat.	Tenĕris,	tenĕris,	tenĕris,
Acc.	Tenĕros,	tenĕras,	tenĕra,
Voc.	Tenĕri,	tenĕræ,	tenĕra,
Abl.	Tenĕris,	tenĕris,	tenĕris.

Examples of adjectives declined in the same manner.

Aspĕri lapĭdis,	Miserōrum homĭnum,
Prospĕri mercatōres,	Aspĕro lapĭde.

*The following adjectives of the first and second declension, ending in *us* and *er*, have *ius* in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, and the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Nom.	Unus,	una,	unum;	*Gen.* unius;[1]	*Dat.* uni, *one*,
	Alius,	alia,	aliud;	alius;	alii, *another*,
	Nullus,	nulla,	nullum;	nullius;	nulli, *none*,
	Solus,	sola,	solum;	solius;	soli, *alone*,
	Totus,	tota,	totum;	totius;	toti, *all*,
	Ullus,	ulla,	ullum;	ullius;	ulli, *any*,
	Alter,	altĕra,	altĕrum;	alterius;	altĕri, *the other*,
	Uter,	utra,	utrum;	utrius;	utri, *either*.

[1] Genitives in *ius* have the *i* long in prose; but in poetry it is common.

Q. Are all adjectives which end in *er* declined like *tener?*

A. They are not; most adjectives in *er*, drop the *e:* as glaber, *smooth.*

Nom. glaber, glabra, glabrum, *and not* glaber, *glaběra, glaběrum.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Q. How are adjectives of the *third* declension declined?

A. The masculine is declined like a masculine noun of the third declension; the feminine is declined in the same manner; and the neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Felix, *happy.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Felix,	felix,	felix,
Gen.	Felīcis,	felīcis,	felīcis,
Dat.	Felīci,	felīci,	felīci,
Acc.	Felīcem,	felīcem,	felix,
Voc.	Felix,	felix,	felix,
Abl.	Felīce *or* Felīci,	felīce *or* felīci,	felīce *or* felīci.

Plural number.

Nom.	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
Gen.	Felicium,	felicium,	felicium,
Dat.	Felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,
Acc.	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
Voc.	Felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
Abl.	Felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,	felicĭbus.

Pauper, *poor.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
Gen.	Paupĕris,	paupĕris,	paupĕris,
Dat.	Paupĕri,	paupĕri,	paupĕri,
Acc.	Paupĕrem,	paupĕrem,	pauper,
Voc.	Pauper,	pauper,	pauper,
Abl.	Paupĕre,	paupĕre,	paupĕre.

Plural number.

Nom.	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
Gen.	Paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,	paupĕrum,
Dat.	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,
Acc.	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
Voc.	Paupĕres,	paupĕres,	paupĕra,
Abl.	Pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus,	pauperĭbus.

Prudens, *prudent.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
Gen.	Prudentis,	prudentis,	prudentis,
Dat.	Prudenti,	prudenti,	prudenti,
Acc.	Prudentem,	prudentem,	prudens,
Voc.	Prudens,	prudens,	prudens,
Abl.	Prudente *or* Prudenti,	*in all the genders.*	

Plural number.

Nom.	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
Gen.	Prudentium,	prudentium,	prudentium,
Dat.	Prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,
Acc.	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
Voc.	Prudentes,	prudentes,	prudentia,
Abl.	Prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus,	prudentĭbus.

Mitis, *meek.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
Gen.	Mitis,	mitis,	mitis,
Dat.	Miti,	miti,	miti,
Acc.	Mitem,	mitem,	mite,
Voc.	Mitis,	mitis,	mite,
Abl.	Miti,	miti,	miti.

Plural number.

Nom.	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
Gen.	Mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
Dat.	Mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,
Acc.	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
Voc.	Mites,	mites,	mitia,
Abl.	Mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus.

Acer *or* acris, *sharp.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Acer *or* acris,	acris,	acre,
Gen.	Acris,	acris,	acris,
Dat.	Acri,	acri,	acri,
Acc.	Acrem,	acrem,	acre,
Voc.	Acer *or* acris,	acris,	acre,
Abl.	Acri,	acri,	acri.

Plural number.

Nom.	Acres,	acres,	acria,
Gen.	Acrium,	acrium,	acrium,
Dat.	Acrĭbus,	acrĭbus,	acrĭbus,
Acc.	Acres,	acres,	acria,
Voc.	Acres,	acres,	acria,
Abl.	Acrĭbus,	acrĭbus,	acrĭbus.

In the same manner are declined the following adjectives.

Terribĭle tonĭtru.	Comi puĕro.
Sublīmes arbŏres.	Gravium lapĭdum.
Lævem aquam.	Virĭdi herbâ.
Omnĭbus hominĭbus.	Terrestria animalia.

Duo, *two.*

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
Gen.	Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,
Dat.	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,
Acc.	Duos *or* duo,	duas,	duo,
Voc.	Duo,	duæ,	duo,
Abl.	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.

Tres, *three.*

Plural number.

Nom.	Tres,	tres,	tria,
Gen.	Trium,	trium,	trium,
Dat.	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
Acc.	Tres,	tres,	tria,
Voc.	Tres,	tres,	tria,
Abl.	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

DEGREES.

Q. How are the different degrees of any quality expressed in Latin?

A. By changes made on the terminations of the adjectives.

Q. What are these changes called?

A. They are called *Degrees of Comparison.*

Q. How many *Degrees of Comparison* are there?

A. There are three; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

POSITIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *positive degree?*

A. The *positive degree* is that which does not express any *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, durus, *hard;* latus, *broad;* parvus, *small.*

COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *comparative degree?*

A. The *comparative degree* is that which expresses some *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, durior, *harder;* latior, *broader;* minor, *less.*

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Q. What is the *superlative degree?*

A. The *superlative degree* is that which expresses the greatest *increase* or *decrease* in the quality: as, durissĭmus, *hardest;* latissĭmus, *broadest;* minĭmus, *least.*

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

Q. How are the degrees formed?

A. The *comparative degree* is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, for the neuter gender: as

Nom.	altus,	alta,	altum,
Gen.	alti.		

Here the genitive is the first case that ends in *i;* then add *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter: as

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	altior,	altior,	altius.

Q. Is the genitive always the first case of the positive that ends in *i?*

A. It is not; sometimes the dative; as, nom. *Mitis;* gen. *Mitis;* dat. *Miti;* then add *or* and *us*, which will make mitior, mitior, mitius.

Mitior, *meeker.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Gen.	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitiōris,
Dat.	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
Acc.	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
Voc.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Abl.	Mitiōre *or* Mitiōri,	*in all the genders.*	

Plural number.

Nom.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
Gen.	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,
Dat.	Mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus,
Acc.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
Voc.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
Abl.	Mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus.

Q. How are all adjectives of the *comparative degree* declined?

A. Like *mitior.*

Q. How is the *superlative degree* formed?

A. The *superlative degree* is also formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding to it *ssĭmus:* as,

Nom.	Altus,	alta,	altum,
Gen.	Alti.		

then add *ssĭmus*, which makes *altissĭmus*, highest.

Q. Is there any exception to this general rule?

A. There is; in all adjectives which end in *er*, the superlative degree is formed from the nominative, by adding *rĭmus;* as *pauper*, poor; *pauperrĭmus*, poorest.

Q. How are all adjectives of the superlative degree declined?

A. Like *Bonus*.

EXAMPLES OF REGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Acūtus *sharp*,	acutior *sharper*,	acutissĭmus *sharpest.*
Antīquus *ancient*,	antiquior *more ancient*,	antiquissĭmus *most ancient.*
Durus *hard*,	durior *harder*,	durissĭmus *hardest.*
Longus *long*,	longior *longer*,	longissĭmus *longest.*
Asper *rough*,	asperior *rougher*,	asperrĭmus *roughest.*
Glaber *smooth*,	glabrior *smoother*,	glaberrĭmus *smoothest.*
Pulcher *fair*,	pulchrior *fairer*,	pulcherrĭmus *fairest.*

EXAMPLES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Bonus *good*,	melior *better*,	optĭmus *best.*
Malus *bad*,	pejor *worse*,	pessĭmus *worst.*
Magnus *great*,	major *greater*,	maxĭmus *greatest.*
Parvus *small*,	minor *less*,	minĭmus *least.*
Multus (masc.) *much*,	————	plurĭmus *most.*
Multa (fem.) *much*,	————	plurĭma *most.*
Multum (neut.) *much*,	plus *more*,	plurĭmum *most.*
Dives *rich*,	dĭtior *richer*,	ditissĭmus *richest.*
Supĕrus *high*,	superior *higher*,	suprēmus *or* summus *highest.*
Infĕrus *low*,	inferior *lower*,	infĭmus *or* imus *lowest.*
Citer *near*,	citerior *nearer*,	citĭmus *nearest.*
Facĭlis *easy*,	facilior *easier*,	facillĭmus *easiest.*
Vetus *old*,	veterior *older*,	veterrĭmus *oldest.*
————	Propior *nearer*,	proxĭmus *nearest.*
————	Ulterior *farther*,	ultĭmus *farthest.*
————	Prior *former*,	primus *first.*
————	Deterior *worse*,	deterrĭmus *worst.*
Inclўtus *famous*,	————	inclytissĭmus *most famous.*
Sacer *sacred*,	————	sacerrĭmus *most sacred.*
Novus *new*,	————	novissĭmus *newest.*
Opĭmus *rich*,	opimior *richer*	————

Senex *old*,	senior *older*.	————
Ingens *large*,	ingentior *larger*.	————
Adolescens *young*,	adolescentior *younger*.	————

PRONOUN.

Q. What is a pronoun?

A. A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun.*

Q. Why does it receive this name?

A. Because it is made up of the Latin word *pro*, which means *for*, and *noun*; as if it were called a *for-noun.*

Q. Will you give me an example?

A. Cicero was the greatest orator of Rome: by *his* vigilance and patriotism *he* saved *his* country from ruin.

Q. Which are the pronouns in this sentence?

A. *He*, and *his*, which stand for the noun *Cicero.*

Q. How many simple pronouns in Latin are there?

A. Eighteen: three substantive pronouns, and fifteen adjective pronouns.

Q. What are the substantive pronouns?

A. *Ego, tu* and *sui.*

Q. Which are the adjective pronouns?

A. *Ille, ipse, iste, his, is, quis, qui, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*, and *cujas.*

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

Ego, *I.*

Singular number

Nom.	ego,	*I*,
Gen.	mei,	*of me*,
Dat.	mihi,	*to* or *for me*,

Acc.	me,	*me,*
Voc.	——	
Abl.	me,	*from, by* or *with me.*

Plural number.

Nom.	nos,	*we,*
Gen.	nostrûm *or* nostri,	*of us,*
Dat.	nobis,	*to* or *for us,*
Acc.	nos,	*us,*
Voc.	——	
Abl.	nobis,	*from, by* or *with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

Singular number.

Nom.	tu,	*thou* or *you,*
Gen.	tui,	*of thee* or *of you,*
Dat.	tibi,	*to thee* or *to you,*
Acc.	te,	*thee* or *you,*
Voc.	tu,	*O thou* or *O you,*
Abl.	te,	*from, by* or *with thee* or *with you.*

Plural number.

Nom.	vos,	*ye* or *you,*
Gen.	vestrûm *or* vestri,	*of you,*
Dat.	vobis,	*to* or *for you,*
Acc.	vos,	*you,*
Voc.	vos,	*O ye* or *you,*
Abl.	vobis,	*from, by* or *with you.*

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

Singular number.

Nom.	——	
Gen.	sui,	*of himself, of herself, of itself,*
Dat.	sibi,	*to himself, to herself, to itself,*

Acc.	se,	*himself, herself, itself,*
Voc.	——	
Abl.	se,	*with himself, with herself, with itself.*

Plural number.

Nom.	——	
Gen.	sui,	*of themselves,*
Dat.	sibi,	*to* or *for themselves,*
Acc.	se,	*themselves,*
Voc.	——	
Abl.	se,	*from, by* or *with themselves.*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Ille, *he.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	Ille,	illa,	illud,
	he,	*she,*	*it.*
Gen.	illius,	illius,	illius,
Dat.	illi,	illi,	illi,
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud,
Voc.	ille,	illa,	illud,
Abl.	illo,	illâ,	illo.

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	illi,	illæ,	illa,
Gen.	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
Dat.	illis,	illis,	illis,
Acc.	illos,	illas,	illa,
Voc.	illi,	illæ,	illa,
Abl.	illis,	illis,	illis.

Hic, *this.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
Gen.	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,
Dat.	huic,	huic,	huic,
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,
Voc.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,
Abl.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Gen.	horum,	harum,	horum,
Dat.	his,	his,	his,
Acc.	hos,	has,	hæc,
Voc.	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Abl.	his,	his,	his.

Q. What do the different genders of *hic* mean?

A. The masculine, *hic*, means *this man;* the feminine, *hæc, this woman;* the neuter, *hoc, this thing.*

Is, ea, id, *he, she, it.*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,
	he,	*she,*	*it.*
Gen.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,
	of him or *his,*	*of her* or *hers,*	*of it* or *its.*
Dat.	ei,	ei,	ei,
	to him,	*to her,*	*to it.*
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,
	him,	*her,*	*it.*

Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	eo, *with him,*	eâ, *with her,*	eo, *with it.*

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	ii, *they*, or *those men,*	eæ, *they*, or *those women,*	ea, *those things.*
Gen.	eōrum, *of those men,* or *their,**	eārum, *of those women*, or *their,*	eōrum, *of those things.*
Dat.	eis *or* iis, *to those men,*	eis *or* iis, *to those women,*	eis *or* iis, *to those things.*
Acc.	eos, *them*, or *those men,*	eas, *them*, or *those women,*	ea, *those things.*
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	eis *or* iis, *with those men,*	eis *or* iis, *with those women,*	eis *or* iis, *with those things.*

Q. What is the meaning of the adjective pronoun *quis?*

A. Quis means *who?* or *what man?* quæ means *who?* or *what woman?* quod or quid means *what? which thing?* or *what thing?*

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,
Gen.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,

* As, eōrum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those men:* eārum libri, *their books*, or *the books of those women.*

Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod *or* quid,
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
Dat.	queis *or* quibus, *in all the genders.*		
Acc.	quos,	quas,	quæ.
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	queis *or* quibus, *in all the genders.*		

Q. What is the *relative* pronoun?

A. Qui, quæ, quod.

Q. What is the meaning of it?

A. Who, which, that; or vir *qui*, the *man who* or *that;* fœmĭna *quæ*, the *woman who* or *that;* negotium *quod*, the *thing which* or *that.*

Q. How is it declined?

Singular number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	qui,	quæ,	quod,
Gen.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quo,	quâ,	quo.

Plural number.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
Dat.	queis *or* quibus, *in all the genders.*		

Acc.	quos,	quas,	quæ,
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	queis *or* quibus, *in all the genders.*		

Q. What other pronouns are there?

A. ***Meus***, which means my or mine; ***tuus***, thy or thine; ***suus***, his own, her own, its own; all which are declined like ***bonus, bona, bonum.*** There are also two, ***noster***, our; and ***vester***, your; declined like ***pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.***

VOCABULARY.

Alexander, Alexandri; proper noun, 2d declen. masc. *Alexander, the name of the great Macedonian general.*

Amĭcus, amĭci; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a friend.*

Anĭmal, animālis; noun, 3d declen. neut. *an animal.*

Aqŭa, aquæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *water.*

Arbor, arbŏris; noun, 3d declen. fem. *a tree*

Asper, aspĕra, aspĕrum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *rough.*

Aurum, auri; noun, 2d declen. neut. *gold.*

Bellus, bella, bellum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *handsome.*

Carus, cara, carum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *dear, beloved*

Comis, comis, come; adjec. 3d declen. *mild.*

Divīnus, divīna, divīnum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *divine.*

Fĭdus, fida, fidum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *faithful.*

Filia, filiæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a daughter.*

Fœmĭna, fœmĭnæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *a woman.*

Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *beautiful.*

Gravis, gravis, grave; adjec. 3d declen. *heavy.*

Herba, herbæ; noun, 1st declen. fem. *grass.*

Homo, homĭnis; noun, 3d declen. common gen. *a man, one of the human race;* sometimes applied to woman, and therefore of the common gender, because common to both man and woman.

Lævis, lœvis, læve; adjec. 3d declen. *smooth.*

Lapis, lapĭdis ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a stone.*
Lex, legis ; noun, 3d declen. fem. *law.*
Magnus, magna, magnum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *great.*
Mercātor, mercatōris ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a merchant.*
Miser, misĕra, misĕrum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *miserable.*
Nomen, nomĭnis ; noun, 3d declen. neut. *a name.*
Omnis, omnis, omne ; adjec. 3d declen. *all.*
Pavo, pavōnis ; noun, 3d declen. masc. *a peacock.*
Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *precious.*
Proprius, propria, proprium; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proper, peculiar.*
Prosper, prospĕra, prospĕrum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *prosperous.*
Puer, puĕri ; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a boy.*
Servus, servi ; noun, 2d declen. masc. *a servant.*
Spes, spei ; noun, 5th declen. fem. *hope.*
Sublīmis, sublīmis, sublīme ; adjec. 3d declen. *lofty, high.*
Superbus, superba, superbum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. *proud.*
Terribĭlis, terribĭlis, terribĭle ; adjec. 3d declen. *terrible.*
Terrestris, terrestris, terrestre ; adjec. 3d declen. *terrestrial, earthly.*
Tonĭtru ; noun, 4th declen. *thunder ;* not declined in the singular number ; nom. plural, *tonitrua.*
Ultĭmus, ultĭma, ultĭmum ; adjec. 1st and 2d declen. superlative degree ; *farthest, last:* it is not used in the positive : the comparative degree is ulterior, *farther.*
Virĭdis, virĭdis, virĭde ; adjec. 3d declen. *green.*

OF THE VERB.

Q. What is a Verb?

A. A verb is that word in a sentence which declares some person or thing either as *being*, as *acting*, or as *being acted upon.*

Q. Give some examples to explain this definition of a verb?

A. When I say *I am*, I speak of my *being*, or my existence; when I say *I strike*, I speak of my *acting*, for I must strike something; when I say *I am struck*, I speak of my *being acted upon*, as some person must strike me.

Q. Why is it called a *verb?*

A. It is called a *verb*, (from the Latin *verbum*, which means a *word*,) because it is the chief word in every sentence; and without it no perfect sentence can exist.

Q. How many kinds of verbs are there?

A. Three: Active, Passive, and Neuter.

ACTIVE VERB.

Q. What is an active verb?

A. An active verb is that which expresses *action;* as *amo*, I love: and it always has an object; for the question would be asked, whom do you love? and the answer to the question is the object. As, I love *you*, I love *virtue.* In these examples *you* and *virtue* are called the *objects* of the verb.

PASSIVE VERB.

Q. What is a passive verb?

A. A passive verb is that which expresses the receiving of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved; which means that I receive the love of another person.

NEUTER VERB.

Q. What is a neuter verb?

A. A neuter verb is that which expresses neither action exerted upon an object, nor the receiving of an action, but only the *being* or *state of things*; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit; *curro*, I run.

Q. Is there not *action* expressed in the verb *curro*, I run?

A. There is: but then the action is confined to the person, and does not pass over to an object; which makes the distinction between an *active* and *neuter* verb.

Q. What is the meaning of the word *neuter?*

A. *Neuter* is the Latin word for *neither*. For example, a *neuter* verb or a *neither* verb is that which is *neither* active nor passive: so a *neuter* noun, or a *neither* noun, is one that is *neither* of the masculine nor feminine gender.

Q. Do verbs undergo any change?

A. They do; on account of their voices, modes, tenses, numbers and persons.

VOICE.

Q. How many voices are there?

A. There are *two* voices; the *active* voice, and the *passive* voice.

Q. How do you distinguish the two voices from one another?

A. The *active* voice ends in *o*; as *amo*, I love; the *passive* voice ends in *or*; as *amor*, I am loved.

MODE.

Q. How many modes are there?

A. There are *four* modes: the *indicative*; the *subjunctive*; the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

Q. What does the *indicative* mode declare?

A. The *indicative* mode *indicates* or declares a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, I love, or I do love: or it asks a question; as *amas tu?* dost thou love?

Q. What does the *subjunctive* mode signify?

A. The *subjunctive* mode signifies *power* or *duty;* as, *amem*, I may love; *amavissem*, I should have loved.

Q. What is the use of the *imperative* mode?

A. The *imperative* mode *commands* or *entreats;* as, *veni huc*, come hither; *ama tu*, love thou; *parce mihi*, spare me.

Q. How is the *infinitive* mode used?

A. The *infinitive* mode has neither number nor person, but expresses the signification of the verb without limit; as, *amāre*, to love; *docēre*, to teach; *legĕre*, to read; *audīre*, to hear.

TENSE.

Q. How many tenses or times are there?

A. Five: the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future.

Q. What does the *present* tense signify?

A. The *present* tense speaketh of a thing *present*, or now doing; as, *amo*, I love, or am loving.

Q. What does the *imperfect* tense express?

A. The *imperfect* tense expresses an action as passing some time ago, but not yet finished; as, *amābam*, I was loving; *ædificābat*, he was building.

Q. What does the *perfect* tense express?

A. The *perfect* tense expresses an action as perfectly completed and finished; as, *amāvit*, he loved, or has loved; *docui*, I taught.

Q. What does the *pluperfect* tense express?

A. The *pluperfect* tense expresses an action as finished before some other action took place; as, *ædificavĕram*, I

had built; that is, I had built before a certain time; *amavĕrat*, he had loved.

Q. What does the *future* tense express?

A. The *future* tense speaks of a thing that will be done in future, or some time hence; as, *amābo*, I shall love; *cœnābo*, I shall sup.

NUMBER.

Q. How many numbers are there?

A. Two: the *singular* number, which speaks of *one:* the *plural* number, which speaks of *two*, or more than two.

PERSON.

Q. How many persons are there?

A. Three: the first, second, and third.

Q. How do you distinguish the persons?

A. The pronouns, *Ego*, I, and *Nos*, we, are of the *first* person: *Tu*, thou, and *Vos*, you, are of the second person: *Ille*, he, and *all other words*, excepting the names of *persons spoken to*, are of the third person.

CONJUGATION.

Q. What do you mean by the conjugation of a verb?

A. The conjugation of a verb is the regular variation and distribution of its several parts, according to its *voices*, *modes*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

Q. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there?

A. Four.

Q. How do you distinguish one conjugation from the other?

A. By the termination or ending of the infinitive mode.

In the first conjugation the infinitive ends in *āre* long; as, *amāre*, to love; *gubernāre*, to govern.

In the second conjugation the infinitive ends in *ēre* long; as, *docēre*, to teach; *exhibēre*, to show.

In the third conjugation the infinitive ends in *ĕre*, short; as, *legĕre*, to read; *regĕre*, to govern.

In the fourth conjugation the infinitive ends in *īre*, long; as, *audīre*, to hear; *venīre*, to come.

Q. Do all verbs belong to one or the other of these conjugations?

A. They do not: a few verbs are irregular, and cannot be classed with verbs of any conjugation; such as the verb *sum*, I am.*

Q. Conjugate the irregular verb *Sum?*

Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative.

Sum. esse. fui.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego sum,	*I am,*
	Second person,	Tu es,	*Thou art*, or *you are,*
	Third person,	Ille est,	*He is;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos sumus,	*We are,*
	Second person,	Vos estis,	*Ye* or *you are,*
	Third person,	Illi sunt,	*They are.*

IMPERFECT TENSE. *was.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego eram,	*I was,*
	Second person,	Tu eras,	*Thou wast*, or *you were,*
	Third person,	Ille erat,	*He was;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos erāmus,	*We were,*
	Second person,	Vos erātis,	*Ye* or *you were,*
	Third person,	Illi erant,	*They were.*

PERFECT TENSE. *have been* or *was.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fui,	*I have been,*
	Second person,	Tu fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*
	Third person,	Ille fuit,	*He has been;*

* For examples of irregular verbs, see 'Appendix,' at the end of the Syntax.

Plural.	First person,	Nos fuĭmus,	*We have been,*
	Second person,	Vos fuistis,	*Ye or you have been,*
	Third person,	Illi fuĕrunt, *or* fuĕre,	*They have been.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *had been.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuĕram,	*I had been,*
	Second person,	Tu fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been,*
	Third person,	Ille fuĕrat,	*He had been;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuerāmus,	*We had been,*
	Second person,	Vos fuerātis,	*Ye or you had been,*
	Third person,	Illi fuĕrant,	*They had been.*

FUTURE TENSE. *shall* or *will.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego ero,	*I shall be,*
	Second person,	Tu eris,	*Thou wilt be,*
	Third person,	Ille erit,	*He will be;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos erĭmus,	*We shall be,*
	Second person,	Vos erĭtis,	*Ye or you will be,*
	Third person,	Illi erunt,	*They will be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego sim,	*I may be,*
	Second person,	Tu sis,	*Thou mayest be,*
	Third person,	Ille sit,	*He may be;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos simus,	*We may be,*
	Second person,	Vos sitis,	*Ye may be,*
	Third person,	Illi sint,	*They may be.*

IMPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would* or *should.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego essem,	*I might be,*
	Second person,	Tu esses,	*Thou mightest be,*
	Third person,	Ille esset,	*He might be;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos essēmus,	*We might be,*
	Second person,	Vos essētis,	*Ye might be,*
	Third person,	Illi essent,	*They might be.*

PERFECT TENSE. *may have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuĕrim,	*I may have been,*
	Second person,	Tu fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been,*
	Third person,	Ille fuĕrit,	*He may have been ;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuerĭmus,	*We may have been,*
	Second person,	Vos fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been,*
	Third person,	Illi fuĕrint,	*They may have been.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE. *might, could, would* or *should have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuissem,	*I might have been,*
	Second person,	Tu fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been,*
	Third person,	Ille fuisset,	*He might have been ;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuissēmus,	*We might have been,*
	Second person,	Vos fuissētis,	*Ye might have been,*
	Third person,	Illi fuissent,	*They might have been.*

FUTURE TENSE. *shall have* or *will have.*

Singular.	First person,	Ego fuĕro,	*I shall have been,*
	Second person,	Tu fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been,*
	Third person,	Ille fuĕrit,	*He will have been ;*
Plural.	First person,	Nos fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been,*
	Second person,	Vos fuerĭtis,	*Ye will have been,*
	Third person,	Illi fuĕrint,	*They will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	Second person,	Es Tu *or* esto Tu,	*Be thou* or *do thou be,*
	Third person,	Esto Ille,	*Let him be ;*
Plur.	Second person,	Esto Vos *or* estōte Vos,	*Be ye* or *be you,*
	Third person,	Sunto Illi,	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present tense,	Esse,	*To be.*
Perfect tense,	Fuisse,	*To have been.*
Future tense,	Esse futūrus,	*To be about to be.*
	Fuisse futūrus,	*To have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future, Futūrus, futūra, futūrum, *About to be.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Q. How is *amo*, I love, of the First Conjugation, conjugated?

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
A.	Amo.	amāre.	amāvi.	amātum.

Q. How is *amo* declined through all the Modes, Tenses and Numbers?

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Singular.	Am-o,	*I love,*
	Am-as,	*Thou lovest,*
	Am-at,	*He loves;*
Plural.	Am-āmus,	*We love,*
	Am-ātis,	*Ye* or *you love,*
	Am-ant,	*They love.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Am-ābam,	*I was loving,*
	Am-ābas,	*Thou wast loving,*
	Am-ābat,	*He was loving;*
Plural.	Am-abāmus,	*We were loving,*
	Am-abātis,	*Ye* or *you were loving,*
	Am-ābant,	*They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Singular.	Am-āvi,	*I have loved,*
	Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved,*
	Am-āvit,	*He has loved;*
Plural.	Am-avĭmus,	*We have loved,*
	Am-avistis,	*Ye* or *you have loved,*
	Am-avērunt *or* am-avēre,	*They have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Singular.	Am-avĕram,	*I had loved,*
	Am-avĕras,	*Thou hadst loved,*
	Am-avĕrat,	*He had loved;*

Plural.	Am-averāmus,	*We had loved,*
	Am-averātis,	*Ye* or *you had loved,*
	Am-avĕrant,	*They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Singular.	Am-ābo,	*I shall love,*
	Am-ābis,	*Thou wilt love,*
	Am-ābit,	*He will love ;*
Plural.	Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love,*
	Am-abĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will love,*
	Am-ābunt,	*They will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Singular.	Am-em,	*I may love,*
	Am-es,	*Thou mayest love,*
	Am-et,	*He may love ;*
Plural.	Am-ēmus,	*We may love,*
	Am-ētis,	*Ye* or *you may love,*
	Am-ent,	*They may love.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should.*

Singular.	Am-ārem,	*I might love,*
	Am-āres,	*Thou mightest love,*
	Am-āret,	*He might love ;*
Plural.	Am-arēmus,	*We might love,*
	Am-arētis,	*Ye* or *you might love,*
	Am-ārent,	*They might love.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Singular.	Am-avĕrim,	*I may have loved,*
	Am-avĕris,	*Thou mayest have loved,*
	Am-avĕrit,	*He may have loved ;*
Plural.	Am-averĭmus,	*We may have loved,*
	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have loved,*
	Am-avĕrint,	*They may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should have.*

Singular.	Am-avissem,	*I might have loved,*
	Am-avisses,	*Thou mightest have loved,*
	Am-avisset,	*He might have loved ;*

Plural.	Am-avissēmus,	*We might have loved,*
	Am-avissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have loved,*
	Am-avissent,	*They might have loved.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Singular.	Am-avĕro,	*I shall have loved,*
	Am-avĕris,	*Thou wilt have loved,*
	Am-avĕrit,	*He will have loved ;*
Plural.	Am-averĭmus,	*We shall have loved,*
	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have loved,*
	Am-avĕrint,	*They will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Am-a *or* amāto,	*Love thou,* or *do thou love,*
	3. Am-āto,	*Let him love ;*
Plural.	2. Am-āte *or* am-atōte,	*Love ye,* or *do ye love,*
	3. Am-anto,	*Let them love.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Am-āre,	*To love.*
Perfect.	Am-avisse,	*To have loved.*
Future.	Esse amatūrus, -a, um,	*To be about to love.*
	Fuisse amatūrus, -a, um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present,	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
Future,	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Gen.	Am-andi,	*Of loving,*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving,*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Am-ātum,	*To love.*
Latter.	Am-ātu,	*To love,* or *to be loved.*

[Let the pupil now commit to memory the third and the eighteenth rules.]

EXAMPLES,

In which are introduced verbs of the first conjugation, and in the active voice only. The vocabulary is at the end of the verbs.

Deus creāvit mundum.
Colōnus arat arvum.
Nos clamaverĭmus.
Omnes honorārent bonos viros.
Ille est promulgatūrus rumōres.
Vos ædificāte domum.
Donātum. Vulnerando.
Tu propĕra.
Nos parabĭmus cœnam.
Vocavisti servum?
Vos sperabĭtis.
Tu laboravĕris.
Equi tolĕrant magna ponděra.
Nos invitarēmus. Explorātu.
Specta cælum.
Canes latrābunt.
Ego declarāvi meam sententiam.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf Part.*
Amor,	amāri,	amātus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	Am-or,	*I am loved,*
	Am-āris *or* -āre,	*Thou art loved,*
	Am-ātur,	*He is loved;*
Plural.	Am-āmur,	*We are loved,*
	Am-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you are loved,*
	Am-antur,	*They are loved.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
	Am-abāris *or* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
	Am-abātur,	*He was loved;*
Plural.	Am-abāmur,	*We were loved,*
	Am-abamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were loved,*
	Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Singular.	Amātus sum *or* fui,	*I have been loved,*
	Amātus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
	Amātus est *or* fuit,	*He has been loved;*

Plural.	Amāti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved,*
	Amāti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been loved,*
	Amāti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Singular.	Amātus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been loved,*
	Amātus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
	Amātus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been loved ;*
Plural.	Amāti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved,*
	Amāti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been loved,*
	Amāti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Singular.	Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved,*
	Am-abĕris *or* abĕre,	*Thou wilt be loved,*
	Am-abĭtur,	*He will be loved ;*
Plural.	Am-abĭmur,	*We shall be loved,*
	Am-abimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be loved,*
	Am-abuntur,	*They will be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can be.*

Singular.	Am-er,	*I may be loved,*
	Am-ēris *or* -ēre,	*Thou mayest be loved,*
	Am-ētur,	*He may be loved ;*
Plural.	Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved,*
	Am-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be loved,*
	Am-entur,	*They may be loved.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should be.*

Singular.	Am-ārer,	*I might be loved,*
	Am-arēris *or* -arēre,	*Thou mightest be loved,*
	Am-arētur,	*He might be loved ;*
Plural.	Am-arēmur,	*We might be loved,*
	Am-aremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be loved,*
	Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Singular.	Amātus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved,*
	Amātus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been loved,*
	Amātus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been loved ;*

Plur.	Amāti simus *or* fuerīmus,	*We may have been loved,*
	Amāti sitis *or* fuerītis,	*Ye* or *you may have been loved,*
	Amāti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Amātus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved,*
	Amātus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been loved,*
	Amātus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved ;*
Plur.	Amāti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved,*
	Amāti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been loved,*
	Amāti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Amātus fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved,*
	Amātus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been loved,*
	Amātus fuĕrit,	*He will have been loved ;*
Plur.	Amāti fuerīmus,	*We shall have been loved,*
	Amāti fuerītis,	*Ye* or *you will have been loved,*
	Amāti fuĕrint,	*They will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Am-āre *or* am-ātor,	*Be thou loved,*
	3. Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved ;*
Plur.	2. Am-amīni,	*Be ye loved,*
	3. Am-antor,	*Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	Am-āri,	*To be loved.*
Perf.	Esse *or* fuisse amātus, -a,-um,	*To have been loved.*
Fut.	Amātum iri,	*To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Am-ātus, -a, -um,	*Loved.*
Fut.	Am-andus, -a, -um,	*To be loved.*

EXAMPLES.

Tu cruciabāris.	Illi rogāti fuĕrint.
Nos comparāmur.	Explorandus.
Nos fugāti essēmus.	Spoliātum iri.

Milites superantur. Ego parātus fuĕro.
Illi privabuntur. Ego vulnerātus sim.
Vos mitigamĭni. Tu delectēris.
Ille nominātor.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Docĕo,	docēre,	docŭi,	doctum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

Singular.	Doc-eo,	*I teach,*
	Doc-es,	*Thou teachest,* or *you teach,*
	Doc-et,	*He teaches ;*
Plural.	Doc-ēmus,	*We teach,*
	Doc-ētis,	*Ye* or *you teach,*
	Doc-ent,	*They teach.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Doc-ēbam,	*I was teaching,*
	Doc-ēbas,	*Thou wast teaching,*
	Doc-ēbat,	*He was teaching ;*
Plural.	Doc-ebāmus,	*We were teaching,*
	Doc-ebātis,	*Ye* or *you were teaching,*
	Doc-ēbant,	*They were teaching.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Singular.	Doc-ui,	*I have taught,*
	Doc-uisti,	*Thou hast taught,*
	Doc-uit,	*He has taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-uĭmus,	*We have taught,*
	Doc-uistis,	*Ye or you have taught,*
	Doc-uĕrunt *or* doc-uēre,	*They have taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Singular.	Doc-uĕram,	*I had taught,*
	Doc-uĕras,	*Thou hadst taught,*
	Doc-uĕrat,	*He had taught ;*

Plural.	Doc-erāmus,	*We had taught,*
	Doc-erātis,	*Ye* or *you had taught,*
	Doc-ĕrant,	*They had taught.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Singular.	Doc-ēbo,	*I shall teach,*
	Doc-ēbis,	*Thou wilt teach,*
	Doc-ēbit,	*He will teach ;*
Plural.	Doc-ēbĭmus,	*We shall teach,*
	Doc-ēbĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will teach,*
	Doc-ēbunt,	*They will teach.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Singular.	Doc-eam,	*I may teach,*
	Doc-eas,	*Thou mayest teach,*
	Doc-eat,	*He may teach ;*
Plural.	Doc-eāmus,	*We may teach,*
	Doc-eātis	*Ye* or *you may teach,*
	Doc-eant,	*They may teach.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Singular.	Doc-ērem,	*I might teach,*
	Doc-ēres,	*Thou mightest teach,*
	Doc-ēret,	*He might teach ;*
Plural.	Doc-erēmus,	*We might teach,*
	Doc-erētis,	*Ye* or *you might teach,*
	Doc-ērent,	*They might teach.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Singular.	Doc-uĕrim,	*I may have taught,*
	Doc-uĕris,	*Thou mayest have taught,*
	Doc-uĕrit,	*He may have taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-uerĭmus,	*We may have taught,*
	Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have taught,*
	Doc-uĕrint,	*They may have taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Singular.	Doc-uissem,	*I might have taught,*
	Doc-uisses,	*Thou mightest have taught,*
	Doc-uisset,	*He might have taught ;*

Plural.	Doc-uissémus,	*We might have taught,*
	Doc-uissétis,	*Ye* or *you might have taught*
	Doc-uissent,	*They might have taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Singular.	Doc-uĕro,	*I shall have taught,*
	Doc-uĕris,	*Thou wilt have taught,*
	Doc-uĕrit,	*He will have taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-uerĭmus,	*We shall have taught,*
	Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have taught,*
	Doc-uĕrint,	*They will have taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Doc-e *or* doc-ēto,	*Teach thou,*
	3. Doc-ēto,	*Let him teach ;*
Plural.	2. Doc-ēte, *or* doc-etōte,	*Teach ye* or *you,*
	3. Doc-ento,	*Let them teach.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Doc-ēre,	*To teach.*
Perfect.	Doc-uisse,	*To have taught.*
Future.	Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to teach.*
	Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to teach.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Doc-ens,	*Teaching.*
Future.	Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to teach.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Doc-endum,	*Teaching,*
Gen.	Doc-endi,	*Of teaching,*
Dat.	Doc-endo,	*To* or *for teaching,*
Acc.	Doc-endum,	*Teaching,*
Abl.	Doc-endo,	*With, from, in* or *by teaching.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Doc-tum,	*To teach.*
Latter.	Doc-tu,	*To teach,* or *to be taught.*

[There are so many irregularities in this and the following Conjugations, that before the pupil goes farther, he had better commit the rules for the formation of the tenses, at the end of the Fourth Conjugation.]

EXAMPLES.

Præceptōres monuērunt eōrum discipŭlos.

Nos prohibebĭmus.	Tu exhibēres.
Servi parērent.	Ille nocitūrus me.
Canes mordēbunt fures.	Manēbis tu?
Sol splendet.	Censuisse.
Jusserāmus.	Ego monēbo illum.
Visum.	Vide solem.
Nos flemus.	Ille teneat ejus locum.
Illi mansĕrint.	Flores florent.

Leo terrēbit omnia animalia.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
Docĕor,	docēri,	doctus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	Doc-eor,	*I am taught,*
	Doc-ēris *or* doc-ēre,	*Thou art taught,*
	Doc-ētur,	*He is taught;*
Plural.	Doc-ēmur,	*We are taught,*
	Doc-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you are taught,*
	Doc-entur,	*They are taught.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Doc-ēbar,	*I was taught,*
	Doc-ebāris *or* doc-ebāre,	*Thou wast taught,*
	Doc-ebātur,	*He was taught;*
Plural.	Doc-ebāmur,	*We were taught,*
	Doc-ebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were taught,*
	Doc-ebantur,	*They were taught.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Singular.	Doctus sum *or* fui,	*I have been taught,*
	Doctus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been taught,*
	Doctus est *or* fuit,	*He has been taught;*

Plural.	Docti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been taught,*
	Docti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye or you have been taught,*
	Docti sunt *or* fuĕrunt *or* fuĕre,	*They have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Singular.	Doctus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been taught,*
	Doctus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been taught,*
	Doctus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been taught ;*
Plural.	Docti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been taught,*
	Docti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye or you had been taught,*
	Docti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Singular.	Doc-ēbor,	*I shall be taught,*
	Doc-ebĕris *or* -ebĕre,	*Thou wilt be taught,*
	Doc-ebĭtur,	*He will be taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-ebĭmur,	*We shall be taught,*
	Doc-ebimĭni,	*Ye or you will be taught,*
	Doc-ebuntur,	*They will be taught.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may*, or *can be.*

Singular.	Doc-ear,	*I may be taught,*
	Doc-eāris *or* doc-eāre,	*Thou mayest be taught,*
	Doc-eātur,	*He may be taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-eāmur,	*We may be taught,*
	Doc-eamĭni,	*Ye or you may be taught,*
	Doc-eantur,	*They may be taught.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should be.*

Singular.	Doc-ērer,	*I might be taught,*
	Doc-erēris *or* doc-erēre,	*Thou mightest be taught,*
	Doc-erētur,	*He might be taught ;*
Plural.	Doc-erēmur,	*We might be taught,*
	Doc-eremĭni,	*Ye or you might be taught,*
	Doc-erentur,	*They might be taught.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Singular.	Doctus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been taught,*
	Doctus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been taught,*
	Doctus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been taught ;*

Plur.	Docti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been taught,*
	Docti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been taught,*
	Docti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Doctus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been taught,*
	Doctus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been taught,*
	Doctus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been taught;*
Plur.	Docti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been taught,*
	Docti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been taught,*
	Docti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Singular.	Doctus fuĕro,	*I shall have been taught,*
	Doctus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been taught,*
	Doctus fuĕrit,	*He will have been taught;*
Plural.	Docti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been taught,*
	Docti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been taught,*
	Docti fuĕrint,	*They will have been taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Doc-ēre *or* doc-ētor,	*Be thou taught,*
	3. Doc-ētor,	*Let him be taught;*
Plural.	2. Doc-emĭni,	*Be ye taught,*
	3. Doc-entor,	*Let them be taught.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Doc-ēri,	*To be taught.*
Perfect.	Esse *or* fuisse doc-tus, -a, -um,	*To have been taught.*
Future.	Doctum iri,	*To be about to be taught.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Doc-tus, -a, -um,	*Taught.*
Future.	Doc-endus, -a, -um,	*To be taught.*

EXAMPLES.

Cohibebāmur.	Torti essēmus.
Suasi fuērunt.	Tentus fuĕris.
Tortum iri.	Deleamĭni.

Delendus. Monemĭni.
Adhibĭtus sit. Prohibēbor.
Jubeantur.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Lego,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read,* or *am reading.*

Singular.	Leg-o,	*I read,*
	Leg-is,	*Thou readest,*
	Leg-it,	*He reads ;*
Plural.	Leg-ĭmus,	*We read,*
	Leg-ĭtis,	*Ye* or *you read,*
	Leg-unt,	*They read.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Leg-ēbam,	*I was reading,*
	Leg-ēbas,	*Thou wast reading,*
	Leg-ēbat,	*He was reading ;*
Plural.	Leg-ebāmus,	*We were reading,*
	Leg-ebātis,	*Ye* or *you were reading,*
	Leg-ēbant,	*They were reading.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Singular.	Lēg-i;	*I have read,*
	Leg-isti,	*Thou hast read,*
	Lēg-it,	*He has read ;*
Plural.	Leg-ĭmus,	*We have read,*
	Leg-istis,	*Ye* or *you have read,*
	Leg-ērunt *or* leg-ēre,	*They have read.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Singular.	Leg-ĕram,	*I had read,*
	Leg-ĕras,	*Thou hadst read,*
	Leg-ĕrat,	*He had read ;*

Plural.	Leg-erâmus,	*We had read,*
	Leg-erâtis,	*Ye or you had read,*
	Leg-ĕrant,	*They had read.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Singular.	Leg-am,	*I shall read,*
	Leg-es,	*Thou wilt read,*
	Leg-et,	*He will read ;*
Plural.	Leg-ēmus,	*We shall read,*
	Leg-ētis,	*Ye or you will read,*
	Leg-ent,	*They will read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Singular.	Leg-am,	*I may read,*
	Leg-as,	*Thou mayest read,*
	Leg-at,	*He may read ;*
Plural.	Leg-âmus,	*We may read,*
	Leg-ătis,	*Ye or you may read,*
	Leg-ant,	*They may read.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should.*

Singular.	Leg-ĕrem,	*I might read,*
	Leg-ĕres,	*Thou mightest read,*
	Leg-ĕret,	*He might read ;*
Plural.	Leg-erēmus,	*We might read,*
	Leg-erētis,	*Ye or you might read,*
	Leg-ĕrent,	*They might read.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Singular.	Leg-ĕrim,	*I may have read,*
	Leg-ĕris,	*Thou mayest have read,*
	Leg-ĕrit,	*He may have read ;*
Plural.	Leg-erĭmus,	*We may have read,*
	Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye or you may have read,*
	Leg-ĕrint,	*They may have read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Singular.	Leg-issem,	*I might have read,*
	Leg-isses,	*Thou mightest have read,*
	Leg-isset,	*He might have read ;*

Plural.	Leg-issēmus,	*We might have read,*
	Leg-issētis,	*Ye* or *you might have read,*
	Leg-issent,	*They might have read.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Singular.	Leg-ĕro,	*I shall have read,*
	Leg-ĕris,	*Thou wilt have read,*
	Leg-ĕrit,	*He will have read ;*
Plural.	Leg-erĭmus,	*We shall have read,*
	Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have read,*
	Leg-ĕrint,	*They will have read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Lĕg-e *or* leg-ĭto,	*Read thou,*
	3. Leg-ĭto,	*Let him read ;*
Plural.	2. Leg-ĭte *or* leg-itōte,	*Read ye,* or *you,*
	3. Leg-unto,	*Let them read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Leg-ĕre,	*To read.*
Perfect.	Lēg-isse,	*To have read.*
Future.	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to read.*
	Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Leg-ens,	*Reading.*
Future.	Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to read.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Leg-endum,	*Reading,*
Gen.	Leg-endi,	*Of reading,*
Dat.	Leg-endo,	*To* or *for reading,*
Acc.	Leg-endum,	*Reading,*
Abl.	Leg-endo,	*With, from, in* or *by reading*

SUPINES.

Former.	Lec-tum,	*To read.*
Latter.	Lec-tu,	*To read,* or *to be read.*

EXAMPLES.

Tempĕrans bibit aquam.	Scripsi multas epistŏlas.
Semper dice verum.	Omnes legĕrent optĭmos libros.
Non tange me.	Punctum.
Duxissētis.	Surrexĕris.
Liquĕro te.	Lusūrus esse.
Misisse librum.	Solve ejus catēnas.
Puĕri tegĕrent eōrum libros.	Accende lucernam.
Calefecisti tuos pedes?	Gessissētis lignum.

Cæsar Romam rexit vincendo Pompeium.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
Lĕgor.	lĕgi.	lectus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	Leg-or,	*I am read,*
	Leg-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	*Thou art read,*
	Leg-ĭtur,	*He is read;*
Plural.	Leg-ĭmur,	*We are read,*
	Leg-imĭni,	*Ye or you are read,*
	Leg-untur,	*They are read.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Leg-ēbar,	*I was read,*
	Leg-ebāris *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast read,*
	Leg-ebātur,	*He was read;*
Plural.	Leg-ebāmur,	*We were read,*
	Leg-ebamĭni,	*Ye or you were read,*
	Leg-ebantur,	*They were read.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Singular.	Lectus sum *or* fui,	*I have been read,*
	Lectus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been read,*
	Lectus est *or* fuit,	*He has been read;*

Plural.	Lecti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been read,*
	Lecti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been read,*
	Lecti sunt *or* fuĕrunt *or* fuĕre,	*They have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Singular.	Lectus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been read,*
	Lectus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been read,*
	Lectus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been read;*
Plural.	Lecti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been read,*
	Lecti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been read,*
	Lecti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been read.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Singular.	Leg-ar,	*I shall be read,*
	Leg-ēris *or* -ēre,	*Thou wilt be read,*
	Leg-ētur,	*He will be read;*
Plural.	Leg-ēmur,	*We shall be read,*
	Leg-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be read,*
	Leg-entur,	*They will be read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can be.*

Singular.	Leg-ar,	*I may be read,*
	Leg-āris *or* -āre,	*Thou mayest be read,*
	Leg-ātur,	*He may be read;*
Plural.	Leg-āmur,	*We may be read,*
	Leg-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be read,*
	Leg-antur,	*They may be read.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should be.*

Singular.	Leg-ĕrer,	*I might be read,*
	Leg-erēris *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightest be read,*
	Leg-erētur,	*He might be read;*
Plural.	Leg-erēmur,	*We might be read,*
	Leg-eremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be read,*
	Leg-erentur,	*They might be read.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Lectus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been read,*
	Lectus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been read,*
	Lectus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been read ;*
Plur.	Lecti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been read,*
	Lecti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been read,*
	Lecti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Lectus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been read,*
	Lectus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been read,*
	Lectus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been read ;*
Plur.	Lecti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been read,*
	Lecti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been read,*
	Lecti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been read.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Lectus fuĕro,	*I shall have been read,*
	Lectus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been read,*
	Lectus fuĕrit,	*He will have been read ;*
Plur.	Lecti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been read,*
	Lecti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been read,*
	Lecti fuĕrint,	*They will have been read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Leg-ĕre *or* ĭtor,	*Be thou read,*
	3. Leg-ĭtor,	*Let him be read ;*
Plur.	2. Leg-imĭni,	*Be ye read,*
	3. Leg-untor,	*Let them be read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Prcs.	Leg-i,	*To be read.*
Perf.	Esse *or* fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	*To have been read.*
Fut.	Lectum iri,	*To be about to be read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Lectus, -a, -um,	*Read.*
Fut.	Legendus, -a, -um,	*To be read.*

EXAMPLES.

Vincebantur.	Poneremĭni.
Divīsi erātis.	Quæsītus sit.
Lædāris.	Gerentur.
Regĕre.	Mittuntor.
Tangendus.	Petebamĭni.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
Audĭo.	audīre.	audīvi.	audītum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear,* or *am hearing.*

Singular.	Aud-io,	*I hear,*
	Aud-is,	*Thou hearest,*
	Aud-it,	*He hears ;*
Plural.	Aud-īmus,	*We hear,*
	Aud-ītis,	*Ye* or *you hear,*
	Aud-iunt,	*They hear.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing,*
	Aud-iēbas,	*Thou wast hearing,*
	Aud-iēbat,	*He was hearing ;*
Plural.	Aud-iebāmus,	*We were hearing,*
	Aud-iebātis,	*Ye* or *you were hearing,*
	Aud-iēbant,	*They were hearing.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Singular.	Aud-īvi,	*I have heard,*
	Aud-īvisti,	*Thou hast heard,*
	Aud-īvit,	*He has heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-īvĭmus,	*We have heard,*
	Aud-īvistis,	*Ye* or *you have heard,*
	Aud-īvērunt *or* aud-īvēre,	*They have heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Singular.	Aud-ivĕram,	*I had heard,*
	Aud-ivĕras,	*Thou hadst heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrat,	*He had heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-iverāmus,	*We had heard,*
	Aud-iverātis,	*Ye* or *you had heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrant,	*They had heard.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Singular.	Aud-iam,	*I shall hear,*
	Aud-ies,	*Thou wilt hear,*
	Aud-iet,	*He will hear ;*
Plural.	Aud-iēmus,	*We shall hear,*
	Aud-iētis,	*Ye* or *you will hear,*
	Aud-ient,	*They will hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Singular.	Aud-iam,	*I may hear,*
	Aud-ias,	*Thou mayest hear,*
	Aud-iat,	*He may hear ;*
Plural.	Aud-iāmus,	*We may hear,*
	Aud-iātis,	*Ye* or *you may hear,*
	Aud-iant,	*They may hear.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should.*

Singular.	Aud-īrem,	*I might hear,*
	Aud-īres,	*Thou mightest hear,*
	Aud-īret,	*He might hear ;*
Plural.	Aud-īrēmus,	*We might hear,*
	Aud-irētis,	*Ye* or *you might hear,*
	Aud-īrent,	*They might hear.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Singular.	Aud-ivĕrim,	*I may have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou mayest have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He may have heard ;*

Plural.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We may have heard,*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They may have heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would* or *should have.*

Singular.	Aud-ivissem,	*I might have heard,*
	Aud-ivisses,	*Thou mightest have heard,*
	Aud-ivisset,	*He might have heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-ivissēmus,	*We might have heard,*
	Aud-ivissētis	*Ye* or *you might have heard,*
	Aud-ivissent,	*They might have heard.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Singular.	Aud-ivĕro,	*I shall have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou wilt have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He will have heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We shall have heard,*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Aud-i *or* -īto,	*Hear thou,*
	3. Aud-īto,	*Let him hear ;*
Plural.	2. Aud-īte *or* itōte,	*Hear ye* or *you,*
	3. Aud-iunto,	*Let them hear.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Aud-īre,	*To hear.*
Perfect.	Aud-ivisse,	*To have heard.*
Future.	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to hear.*
	Fuisse auditūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Aud-iens,	*Hearing.*
Future.	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	*About to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing,*
Gen.	Aud-iendi,	*Of hearing,*

Dat.	Aud-iendo,	*To* or *for hearing*,
Acc.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing*,
Abl.	Aud-iendo,	*With, from, in,* or *by hearing*.

SUPINES.

Former.	Aud-ītum,	*To hear.*
Latter.	Aud-ītu,	*To hear*, or *to be heard.*

EXAMPLES.

Dormiēbam.	Sciēmus īllum.
Erudivissēmus puĕros.	Servīto.
Omnes nutriunto doctrīnam.	Sepelient corpus.
Obedivĕras.	Venĕro.
Leges punient malos.	Sentiātis.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
Audior.	audīri.	audītus.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Singular.	Aud-ior,	*I am heard*,
	Aud-īris *or* īre,	*Thou art heard*,
	Aud-ītur,	*He is heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-īmur,	*We are heard*,
	Aud-imĭni,	*Ye* or *you are heard*,
	Aud-iuntur,	*They are heard.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Singular.	Aud-iēbar,	*I was heard*,
	Aud-iebāris *or* iebāre,	*Thou wast heard*,
	Aud-iebātur,	*He was heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-iebāmur,	*We were heard*,
	Aud-iebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were heard*,
	Aud-iebantur,	*They were heard.*

PERFECT. *have been.*

Singular.	Audītus sum *or* fui,	*I have been heard,*
	Audītus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been heard,*
	Audītus est *or* fuit,	*He has been heard ;*
Plural.	Audīti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been heard,*
	Audīti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been heard,*
	Audīti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Singular.	Audītus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been heard,*
	Audītus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been heard*
	Audītus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been heard ;*
Plural.	Audīti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard,*
	Audīti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been heard,*
	Audīti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Singular.	Aud-iar,	*I shall be heard,*
	Aud-iēris *or* -iēre,	*Thou wilt be heard,*
	Aud-iētur,	*He will be heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-iēmur,	*We shall be heard,*
	Aud-iemĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be heard,*
	Aud-ientur,	*They will be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can be.*

Singular.	Aud-iar,	*I may be heard,*
	Aud-iāris *or* iāre,	*Thou mayest be heard,*
	Aud-iātur,	*He may be heard ;*
Plural.	Aud-iāmur,	*We may be heard,*
	Aud-iamĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be heard,*
	Aud-iantur,	*They may be heard.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Singular.	Aud-īrer,	*I might be heard,*
	Aud-irēris *or* -irēre,	*Thou mightest be heard,*
	Aud-irētur,	*He might be heard ;*

Plur.	Aud-irēmur,	*We might be heard,*
	Aud-iremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be heard,*
	Aud-irentur,	*They might be heard.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Audītus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard,*
	Audītus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been heard,*
	Audītus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been heard;*
Plur.	Audīti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been heard,*
	Audīti sitis *or* fueritis,	*Ye* or *you may have been heard,*
	Audīti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Audītus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been heard,*
	Audītus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been heard,*
	Audītus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been heard;*
Plur.	Audīti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been heard,*
	Audīti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been heard,*
	Audīti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Audītus fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard,*
	Audītus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been heard,*
	Audītus fuĕrit,	*He will have been heard;*
Plur.	Audīti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been heard,*
	Audīti fueritis,	*Ye* or *you will have been heard,*
	Audīti fuĕrint,	*They will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Aud-īre *or* -ītor,	*Be thou heard,*
	3. Aud-ītor,	*Let him be heard;*
Plur.	2. Aud-imĭni,	*Be ye heard,*
	3. Aud-iuntor,	*Let them be heard.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	Aud-īri,	*To be heard.*
Perf.	Esse *or* fuisse audītus, -a, -um,	*To have been heard.*
Fut.	Auditum iri,	*To be about to be hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	Aud-ītus, *	*Heard.*
Future.	Aud-iendus,	*To be heard.*

EXAMPLES.

Obediamĭni.	Vestirēmur.
Nutriebāris.	Irretiuntur.
Erudītus fŭĕro.	Vincientur.
Vestiendus.	Nutrītus.
Redimīti sitis.	

VOCABULARY.*

Accendo, accendĕre, accendi, accensum ; act. *to light up.*
Adhibeo, adhibēre, adhibui, adhibĭtum ; act. *to admit.*
Edifĭco, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum ; act. *to build, to create.*
Animal, animālis ; noun, neut. *an animal.*
Aqua, aquæ ; noun, fem. *water.*
Aro, arāre, arâvi, arātum ; act. *to plough.*
Arvum, arvi ; noun, neut. *the ground.*
Bibo, bibĕre, bibi, bibĭtum ; act. *to drink.*
Bonus, bona, bonum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *good.*
Cælum, cæli ; noun, neut. *the sky, heaven.*
Cæsar, Cæsăris ; noun, masc. *Cæsar*, the name of a great Roman general.
Calefacio, calefacĕre, calefēci, calefactum ; act. *to warm.*
Canis, canis ; noun, com. *a dog.*
Catēna, catēnæ ; noun, fem. *a chain.*
Censeo, censēre, censui, censum ; neut. *to judge.*
Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum ; act. *to cry.*
Cœna, cœnæ ; noun, fem. *supper.*

---

*The conjugations of the verbs and the declensions of the nouns are not put down here, as the scholar will know the former by the infinitive, and the latter by the genitive case.

Cohibeo, cohibēre, cohibui, cohibĭtum ; act. *to restrain.*
Colōnus, colōni ; noun, masc. *a husbandman.*
Compăro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum ; act. *to compare.*
Corpus, corpŏris ; noun, neut. *the body.*
Creo, creāre, creāvi, creātum ; act. *to create.*
Crucio, cruciāre, cruciāvi, cruciātum ; act. *to torment.*
Declāro, declarāre, declarāvi, declarātum ; act. *to declare.*
Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectātum ; act. *to delight.*
Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum ; act. *to destroy.*
Deus, Dei ; noun, masc. *God.*
Dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictum ; act. *to say, to speak.*
Discipŭlus, discipŭli ; noun, masc. *a scholar.*
Divīdo, dividĕre, divīsi, divīsum ; act. *to divide.*
Doctrīna, doctrīnæ ; noun, fem. *learning.*
Domus, domûs and domi ; noun, fem. *a house.* See page 27.
Dono, donāre, donāvi, donātum ; actt *to present, to give.*
Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormītum ; neut. *to sleep.*
Duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum ; act. *to lead.*
Ejus, *his*, gen. sing. of *is, ea, id.*
Eōrum, *their*, gen. plur. of *is, ea, id.*
Epistŏla, epistŏlæ ; noun, fem. *a letter.*
Equus, equi ; noun, masc. *a horse.*
Erudio, erudīre, erudīvi, eruditum ; act. *to instruct.*
Exhibeo, exhibēre, exhibui, exhibĭtum ; act. *to show, to exhibit.*
Explōro, explorāre, explorāvi, explorātum ; act. *to search.*
Fleo, flēre, flevi, fletum ; neut. *to weep.*
Floreo, florēre, florui ; (no supine,) neut. *to flourish, to blossom.*
Flos, flōris ; noun, masc. *a flower.*
Fugo, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātum ; act. *to rout*, or *put to flight.*
Fur, furis ; noun, com. *a thief, a robber.*
Gero, gerĕre, gessi, gestum ; act. *to carry.*
Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum ; act. *to honor.*
Invīto, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātum ; act. *to invite.*
Irretio, irretīre, irretīvi, irretītum ; act. *to ensnare.*
Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum ; act. *to order.*
Labōro, laborāre, laborāvi, laborātum ; act. and neut. *to labour.*
Lædo, lædĕre, læsi, læsum ; act. *to hurt.*
Latro, latrāre, latrāvi, latrātum ; neut. *to bark.*

Lego, legĕre, legi, lectum ; act. *to read.*
Leo, leōnis ; noun, masc. *a lion.*
Lex, legis ; noun, fem. *a law.*
Liber, libri ; noun, masc. *a book.*
Lignum, ligni ; noun, neut. *wood.*
Linquo, linquĕre, liqui ; (no supine,) act. *to leave.*
Locus, loci ; noun, masc. *a place.* In the plural it is both masc. and neut. making *loci* and *loca* in the nom.
Lucerna, lucernæ ; noun, fem. *a lamp, a candle.*
Ludo, ludĕre, lusi, lusum ; neut. *to play.*
Magnus, magna, magnum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *great.*
Malus, mala, malum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *bad.*
Mali, malōrum ; as a noun, *bad men.*
Maneo, manēre, mansi, mansum ; neut. *to remain.*
Meus, mea, meum ; adj. pro. *my.*
Miles, milĭtis ; noun, cōm. *a soldier.*
Mitĭgo, mitigāre, mitigāvi, mitigātum ; act. *to pacify.*
Mitto, mittĕre, misi, missum ; act. *to send.*
Moneo, monēre, monui, monĭtum ; act. *to admonish.*
Mordeo, mordēre, momordi, morsum ; act. *to bite.*
Multus, multa, multum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *much, many.*
Mundus, mundi ; noun, masc. *the world.*
Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocĭtum ; act. *to hurt.*
Nomĭno, nomināre, nomināvi, nominātum ; act. *to name.*
Non ; adverb, *not.*
Nutrio, nutrīre, nutrīvi, nutrītum ; act. *to nourish, to cherish, to foster.*
Obedio, obedīre, obedīvi, obedītum ; neut. *to obey.*
Omnis, omnis, omne ; adj. 3d declen. *all, every.*
Optĭmus, optĭma, optĭmum ; adj. 1st and 2d declen. *the best.* It is the superlative degree of *bonus*, which see on page 40.
Pareo, parēre, parui, parĭtum ; neut. *to obey.*
Paro, parāre, parāvi, parātum ; act. *to prepare.*
Pes, pedis ; noun, masc. *the foot.*
Peto, petĕre, petīvi, petītum ; act. *to seek.*
Pompeĭus, Pompeii ; noun, masc. *Pompey*, a distinguished Roman.
Pondus, ponděris ; noun, neut. *a load, a weight.*
Pono, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum ; act. *to place, to put.*
Porto, portāre, portāvi, portātum ; act. *to carry.*

Præceptor, præceptōris ; noun, masc. *an instructer.*
Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum ; act. *to deprive.*
Prohibeo, prohibēre, prohibui, prohibĭtum ; act. *to hinder, to prohibit.*
Promulgo, promulgāre, promulgāvi, promulgātum ; act. *to publish.*
Propĕro, properāre, properāvi, properātum ; act. and neut. *to hasten.*
Puer, puĕri ; noun, masc. *a boy.*
Pungo, pungĕre, pupŭgi, punctum ; act. *to prick.*
Punio, punīre, punīvi, punītum ; act. *to punish.*
Quæro, quærĕre, quæsīvi, quæsītum ; act. *to seek.*
Redimio, redimīre, redimīvi, redimītum ; act. *to bind.*
Rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum ; act. *to rule, to govern.*
Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum ; act. *to ask.*
Roma, Romæ ; noun, fem. *Rome*, the capital of Italy.
Rumor, rumōris ; noun, masc. *a rumor ;* in the plural, *news.*
Scio, scīre, scīvi, scītum ; act. *to know.*
Scribo, scribĕre, scripsi, scriptum ; act. *to write.*
Semper ; adverb, *always.*
Sententia, sententiæ ; noun, fem. *an opinion.*
Sentio, sentīre, sensi, sensum ; act. *to feel.*
Sepelio, sepelīre, sepelīvi, sepultum ; act. *to bury.*
Servio, servīre, servīvi, servītum ; act. *to serve, to obey.*
Servus, servi ; noun, masc. *a servant.*
Sol, solis ; noun, masc. *the sun.*
Solvo, solvĕre, solvi, solūtum ; act. *to loose.*
Specto, spectāre, spectāvi, spectātum ; act. *to behold, look at.*
Spero, sperāre, sperāvi, sperātum ; act. *to hope.*
Splendeo, splendēre, splendui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to shine.*
Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum ; act. *to rob.*
Suadeo, suadēre, suāsi, suāsum ; act. *to advise.*
Supĕro, superāre, superāvi, superātum, act. *to conquer.*
Surgo, surgĕre, surrexi, surrectum ; neut. generally, but sometimes act. *to rise.*
Tango, tangĕre, tetĭgi, tactum ; act. *to touch.*
Tego, tegĕre, texi, tectum ; act. *to cover.*
Tempĕrans, tempĕrans, tempĕrans ; adj. 3d declen. *temperate.* When it is not joined to any noun, it means *a temperate man*, or *woman.*
Teneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum ; act. *to hold, to keep.*
Terreo, terrēre, terrui, terrĭtum ; act. *to frighten.*
Tolĕro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum ; act. *to bear.*

Torqueo, torquēre, torsi, tortum ; act. *to twist, to twirl.*
Tuus, tua, tuum ; adj. pronoun, *thy, your.*
Venio, venīre, vēni, ventum ; neut. *to come.*
Verum, veri ; noun, neut. *the truth.*
Vestio, vestīre, vestīvi, vestītum ; act. *to clothe.*
Video, vidēre, vīdi, visum ; act. *to see.*
Vincio, vincīre, vinxi, vinctum ; act. *to bind.*
Vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum ; act. *to overcome, to conquer.*
Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum ; act. *to call.*
Vulnĕro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum ; act. *to wound.*

FORMATION OF VERBS.

Q. How many principal parts of a verb are there from which all the others are formed?

A. Four.

Q. What are they?

A. They are *O*, the ending of the *present* tense; *I*, the ending of the *perfect* tense; *RE*, the ending of the *infinitive* mode; and *UM*, the ending of the *supine.*

Q. When is a verb said to be *conjugated?*

A. When all these four parts are mentioned, because from these all the rest are derived.

Q. What is called the *Theme*, or *Root* of the verb?

A. The first person singular, of the indicative mode, present tense; because from this the other three parts are formed.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam;* as, *am-o, am-ābam:*—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into

bam; as, *doce-o, docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as *leg-o, leg-ēbam; audi-o, audi-ēbam.*

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* tense of the Indicative formed?

A. The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *ĕram; as, amāv-i, amav-ĕram; docu-i, docu-ĕram; leg-i, leg-ĕram; audīv-i, audiv-ĕram.*

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present,* by changing *o,* in the first conjugation, into *ābo;* as, *am-o, am-ābo;* in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo;* as, *doce-o, docē-bo;* in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am;* as, *leg-o, leg-am; audi-o, audiam.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present* tense, Subjunctive, formed?

A. The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o,* in the first conjugation, into *em;* as, *am-o, am-em;* in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am;* as, *doce-o, doce-am; leg-o, leg-am; audi-o, audi-am.*

Q. How is the *Imperfect* tense formed?

A. The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m;* as, *amāre, amārem; docēre, docērem; legĕre, legĕrem; audīre, audīrem.*

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕrim;* as, *amāv-i, amav-ĕrim; docu-i, docu-ĕrim; leg-i, leg-ĕrim; audīv-i, audiv-ĕrim.*

Q. How is the *Pluperfect* formed?

A. The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem;* as, *amāv-i, amav*

issem; docu-i, docu-issem; leg-i, leg-issem; audīv-i, audiv-issem.

Q. How is the *Future* tense formed?

A. The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕro;* as, *amāv-i, amav-ĕro; docu-i, docu-ĕro; leg-i, leg-ĕro, audīv-i, audiv-ĕro.*

Imperative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperative* mode formed?

A. The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re;* as, *amāre, ama; docēre, doce; legĕre, lege; audī-re, audi.*

Infinitive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present infinitive* formed?

A. The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o,* in the first conjugation, into *āre;* as, *am-o, am-āre;* in the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re;* as, *doce-o, docē-re; audi-o, audī-re;* in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ĕre;* as, *leg-o, leg-ĕre; cap-io, cap-ĕre.*

Q. How is the *Perfect* formed?

A. The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse;* as, *amāv-i amav-isse; docu-i, docu-isse; leg-i, leg-isse; audīv-i, audiv-isse.*

Q. How is the *Future* formed?

A. The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus,* and adding *esse,* or *fuisse;* as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; doctu-m, doctū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; lectu-m, lectū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; audītu-m, auditū-rus, esse* or *fuisse.*

Participles.

Q. How is the *Present Participle* formed?

A. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o,* in the first conjugation, into *ans;*

as, *am-o*, *am-ans;* in the second conjugation, by changing *e* into *ns;* as, *doce-o*, *doce-ns;* in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens;* as, *leg-o*, *leg-ens; audi-o*, *audi-ens.*

Q. How is the *Future Participle* formed?

A. The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus;* as, *amātu-m*, *amatū-rus; doctu-m*, *doctū-rus; lectu-m*, *lectū-rus; audītu-m*, *auditū-rus.*

Gerunds.

Q. How are the *Gerunds* formed?

A. The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do;* as,

aman-s;	*aman-dum*,	*aman-di*,	*aman-do;*
docen-s;	*docen-dum*,	*docen-di*,	*docen-do;*
legen-s;	*legen-dum*,	*legen-di*,	*legen-do;*
audien-s;	*audien-dum*,	*audien-di*,	*audien-do.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.

Q. What five tenses in these modes are formed from the same tenses in the active voice?

A. The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative;* and the *Present*, *and Imperfect Subjunctive*, are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

Q. How are they formed?

A. From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r;* but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*.

Q. Can you give me some examples?

	First Conjugation.		*Second Conjugation.*		*Third Conjugation.*	
	Active.	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Pres. Indic.	amo,	amor.	doceo,	docear.	lego,	legor.
Imp. Indic.	amābam,	amābar.	docēbam,	docēbar.	legēbam,	legēbar.
Fut. Indic.	amābo,	amābor.	docēbo,	docēbor.	legam,	legar.
Pres. Subj.	amem,	amer.	doceam,	docear.	legam,	legar.
Imp. Subj.	amārem,	amārer.	docērem,	docērer.	legĕrem,	legĕrer.

Q. How are the other five tenses formed?

A. The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative;* and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum.**

Imperative Mode.

Q. How is the *Imperative* mode formed?

A. The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active.*

Infinitive Mode.

Q. How is the *Present Infinitive* formed?

A. The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i;* as, *amār-e, amār-i; docēr-e, docēr-i; audīr-e, audīr-i;* and in the third conjugation, by changing *ĕre* into *i;* as, *leg-ĕre, leg-i.*

Q. How is the *Future Infinitive* formed?

A. The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri; doctum iri; lectum iri.*

---

* Let reference be made to the verbs.

Participles.

Q. How is the *Perfect Participle* formed?

A. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātu-m, amātu-s; doctu-m, doctu-s; lectu-m, lectu-s; audītu-m, audītu-s.*

Q. How is the *Future Participle* formed?

A. The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans, amandus; docens, docendus; legens, legendus; audiens, audiendus.*

A PARADIGM *

Of the Tenses of the Active Voice of the Four Conjugations according to the preceding Formation.

1st Conj.	*2d Conj.*	*3d Conj.*	*4th Conj.*	*Names of the Tenses.*
From AMO, *are formed*	*From* MONEO, *are formed*	*From* REGO, *are formed*	*From* AUDIO, *are formed*	*Present Indicative.*
Amābam,	monēbam,	regēbam,	audiēbam,	*Imperfect Indicative.*
Amābo,	monēbo,	regam,	audiam,	*Future Indicative.*
Amem,	moneam,	regam,	audiam,	*Present Subjunctive.*
Amans,	monens,	regens,	audiens,	*Present Participle*
Amandum,	monendum,	regendum,	audiendum,	*Gerunds.*
Amandi,	monendi,	regendi,	audiendi,	
Amando, &c.	monendo, &c.	regendo, &c.	audiendo, &c.	

* *Paradigm* means an *exhibition*, or *model.*

From AMĀRE, *are formed*	*From* MONĒRE, *are formed*	*From* REGĔRE, *are formed*	*From* AUDĪRE, *are formed*	
Ama,	mone,	rege,	audī,	*Imperative.*
Amārem,	monērem,	regĕrem,	audīrem,	*Imperfect Subjunctive.*
AMĀVI,	MONUI,	REXI,	AUDĪVI.	*Perfect Indicative.*
Amavĕram,	monuĕram,	rexĕram,	audivĕram,	*Pluperfect Indicative.*
Amavĕrim,	monuĕrim,	rexĕrim,	audivĕrim,	*Perfect Subjunctive.*
Amavissem,	monuissem,	rexissem,	audivissem,	*Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
Amavĕro,	monuĕro,	rexĕro,	audivĕro,	*Future Subjunctive.*
Amavisse,	monuisse,	rexisse,	audivisse.	*Perfect Infinitive.*
MĀTUM,	MONĬTUM,	RECTUM,	AUDĪTUM,	*Former Supine.*
nātu,	monĭtu,	rectu,	audītu,	*Latter Supine.*
natūrus,	monitūrus,	rectūrus,	auditūrus.	*Future Participle.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

Q. What is a *Deponent* verb?

A. A *Deponent* verb is a verb which has a passive form, but an active signification.

Q. Why is a verb called *Deponent?*

A. It is so called because it has *laid aside*, or *put off* its active voice and passive sense: from two Latin words, *pono*, which means *to put* or *place* and *de*, *off*, or *from*.

Q. How many participles has a deponent verb?

A. Four: two of which, namely, the *present* and one of the *futures*, are of the active form.

Conjugation of the *Deponent* verb Lætor, *I rejoice*, of the first conjugation.

Present Indicative,	*Present Infinitive,*	*Perfect.*
Lætor,	Lætāri,	Lætātus sum.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætor,	*I rejoice,*
	Lætāris *or* Lætāre,	*Thou rejoicest,*
	Lætātur,	*He rejoices;*
Plural.	Lætāmur,	*We rejoice,*
	Lætamĭni,	*Ye* or *you rejoice,*
	Lætantur,	*They rejoice.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætābar,	*I rejoiced,*
	Lætabāris *or* Lætabāre,	*Thou rejoicedst,*
	Lætabātur,	*He rejoiced;*
Plural.	Lætabāmur,	*We rejoiced,*
	Lætabamĭni,	*Ye* or *you rejoiced,*
	Lætabantur,	*They rejoiced.*

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus sum,	*I have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus es,	*Thou hast rejoiced,*
	Lætātus est,	*He has rejoiced ;*
Plural.	Lætāti sumus,	*We have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti estis,	*Ye* or *you have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti sunt,	*They have rejoiced.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus eram,	*I had rejoiced,*
	Lætātus eras,	*Thou hadst rejoiced,*
	Lætātus erat,	*He had rejoiced ;*
Plural.	Lætāti erāmus,	*We had rejoiced,*
	Lætāti erātis,	*Ye* or *you had rejoiced,*
	Lætāti erant,	*They had rejoiced.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Lætābor,	*I shall rejoice,*
	Lætaběris *or* lætaběre,	*Thou wilt rejoice,*
	Lætabĭtur,	*He will rejoice ;*
Plural.	Lætabĭmur,	*We shall rejoice,*
	Lætabimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will rejoice,*
	Lætabuntur,	*They will rejoice.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Læter,	*I may rejoice,*
	Lætēris *or* lætēre,	*Thou mayest rejoice,*
	Lætētur,	*He may rejoice ;*
Plural.	Lætēmur,	*We may rejoice,*
	Lætemĭni,	*Ye* or *you may rejoice,*
	Lætentur,	*They may rejoice.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætārer,	*I might rejoice,*
	Lætarēris *or* lætarēre,	*Thou mightest rejoice,*
	Lætarētur,	*He might rejoice ;*

Plural.	Lætarēmur,	*We might rejoice,*
	Lætaremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might rejoice,*
	Lætarentur,	*They might rejoice.*

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus sim,	*I may have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus sis,	*Thou mayest have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus sit,	*He may have rejoiced ;*
Plural.	Lætāti simus,	*We may have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti sitis,	*Ye* or *you may have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti sint,	*They may have rejoiced.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus essem,	*I might have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus esses,	*Thou mightest have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus esset,	*He might have rejoiced ;*
Plural.	Lætāti essēmus,	*We might have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti essētis,	*Ye* or *you might have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti essent,	*They might have rejoiced.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Lætātus fuĕro,	*I shall have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have rejoiced,*
	Lætātus fuĕrit,	*He will have rejoiced ;*
Plural.	Lætāti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have rejoiced,*
	Lætāti fuĕrint,	*They will have rejoiced.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Singular.	2. Lætāre *or* lætātor,	*Rejoice thou,* or *do thou rejoice,*
	3. Lætātor,	*Let him rejoice ;*
Plural.	2. Lætamĭni,	*Rejoice ye,* or *do ye rejoice,*
	3. Lætantor,	*Let them rejoice.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present.	Lætāri,	*To rejoice.*
Perfect.	Lætātus esse *or* fuisse,	*To have rejoiced.*
Future.	Lætatūrus esse,	*To be about to rejoice.*
	Lætatūrus fuisse,	*To have been about to rejoice.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Lætans,	*Rejoicing.*
Perfect.	Lætĭtus,	*Having rejoiced.*
Future.	Lætatūrus,	*About to rejoice.*
	Lætandus,	*To be rejoiced at.*

Q. Are all *Deponent* verbs of the first conjugation declined in this manner?

A. They are.

Q. How are those of the other three conjugations declined?

A. In the same general manner, making those alterations which are peculiar to each conjugation.

EXAMPLES.

Arbitrabāmur.	Ortūri.	Tutātus sim.
Merĭtus sis.	Expertus est.	Amplectendus.
Questus fuĕro.	Mirandus.	Blanditūrus esse.
Dominăre.	Lamentāri.	Mori.
Recordantur.	Contemplăremĭni.	Experiuntor.
Tutamĭni.	Vagabātur.	Usus.
Operatūrus fuisse.	Gloriāti fuerĭtis.	Usus esse.
Partiĕns.	Prædantur.	Interpretātus esses.
Pacti essētis.		

VOCABULARY OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum ; 3d conj. *to embrace.*
Arbĭtror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum ; 1st conj. *to think.*
Blandior, blandīri, blanditus sum ; 4th conj. *to flatter.*
Contemplor, contemplāri, contemplātus sum ; 1st conj. *to behold.*
Dominor, domināri, dominātus sum ; 1st conj. *to rule.*
Experior, experīri, expertus sum ; 4th conj. *to try.*
Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum ; 1st conj. *to boast.*
Interprĕtor, interpretāri, interpretātus sum ; 1st conj. *to explain.*

Lamentor, lamentāri, lamentātus sum ; 1st conj. *to bewail.*
Mereor, merēri, meritus sum ; 2d conj. *to deserve.*
Miror, mirāri, mirātus sum ; 1st conj. *to wonder.*
Morior, mori, mortuus sum ; 3d conj. *to die.*
Opĕror, operāri, operātus sum ; 1st conj. *to work.*
Orior, orīri, ortus sum ; 3d conj. *to rise.*
Paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum ; 3d conj. *to bargain.*
Partior, partīri, partītus sum ; 4th conj. *to divide.*
Prædor, prædāri, prædātus sum ; 1st conj. *to plunder.*
Queror, queri, questus sum ; 3d conj. *to complain.*
Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum ; 1st conj. *to remember.*
Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum ; 1st conj. *to defend.*
Utor, uti, usus sum ; 3d conj. *to use.*
Vagor, vagāri, vagātus sum ; 1st conj. *to wander.*

[For Irregular verbs, see Appendix after the Syntax.]

PARTICIPLES.

Q. What is a *Participle?*

A. A *Participle* is a kind of adjective, formed from a verb, which in its meaning has reference to time.

Q. Why is it called a Participle?

A. From the Latin word *partĭceps*, a partaker, one who takes part of any thing, because it partakes of the nature of an adjective and a verb.

Q. How many participles has a Latin verb?

A. Four: two in the active voice, the present and the future; as *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love; and two in the passive voice, the perfect and the future; as *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

GERUNDS.

Q. What are *Gerunds?*

A. *Gerunds* are participial words, partaking of the nature of a noun, and of a verb.

Q. How are they like nouns?

A. In their form: for they are declined in all cases except the vocative, like a neuter noun of the *second declension*, and are governed like nouns.

Q. In what respects are they like verbs?

A. In their possessing time, and having the signification of the verbs from which they are derived, and governing the same case.

SUPINES.

Q. What are *Supines?*

A. *Supines* are also participial words. They are like the accusative and ablative cases of nouns of the *fourth declension*, and have the signification of the verb from which they are derived.

ADVERBS.

Q. What is an *Adverb?*

A. An *Adverb* is an indeclinable word *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, which affects their signification.

Q. Why is it so called?

A. From the Latin word *ad*, which means *to*, and *verbum*, which means a *word;* because it is always *added to* some verb, adjective, or other adverb.

PREPOSITIONS.

Q. What is a *Preposition?*

A. A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another; and which governs nouns in the accusative and ablative cases.

Q. From what do *Prepositions* derive their name?

A. From two Latin words, namely, *præ*, which means *before;* and *positum*, (the supine of the verb *pono*,) *to put* or *place;* as these words are always *placed before* nouns.

Q. How many prepositions govern the accusative case?
A. Thirty-two.*

EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Ad,	*to;*	Cicĕro scripsit[1] epistŏlas *ad* Attĭcum.
Adversum,	*against;*	Bonus civis facit nihil *adversum* leges
Adversus,	*opposite to;*	Carthâgo fuit *adversus* Italiam.
	towards;	Cole[2] justitiam *adversus* omnes.
Ante,	*before;*	Venit *ante* noctem.
Apud,	*at;*	Cæsar posuit[3] ejus[4] castra *apud* Iconium.
	among;	Bonus vir amabĭtur *apud* omnes.
Circa,	*about;*	Reges habent præsidia *circum* se.
Circum,		Fuit neglĭgens *circa* ejus salūtem.
Circĭter,	*about;*	Ille venit ad me *circĭter* octāvam horam.
Cis,	*on this side;*	Gallia est *citra* Italiam.
Citra,		
	within;	Vidēbo te *cis* paucos dies.
Contra,	*against;*	Ille vivit *contra* natūram.
	contrary to;	Hannĭbal duxit[5] exercĭtum ad Romam *contra* expectatiōnem.
Erga,	*towards;*	Deus est bonus *erga* homĭnes.
Extra,	*without;*	Ille est *extra* vitium.
Infra,	*beneath;*	Vitiōsus vir est *infra* observatiōnem ullĭus.
	within;	Veni *infra* decem dies.

* These examples may be omitted until the scholar has gone as far as the 44th rule in Syntax. The words are in the general vocabulary.

[1] See *scribo.* [2] Imperative mode of *colo.* [3] See *pono.*

[4] *Ejus* genitive singular of *is*, (see page 44,) and means *of him*, or *of her*, or *of it*; and may be translated *his*, *hers*, or *its*; as,

pone ejus tergum,
behind his back.

[5] See *duco.*

Inter,	*between;*	Amor *inter* liberos et parentes est magnus.
	in the midst of;	Epaminondas periit *inter* pugnam.
Intra,	*within;*	*Intra* decem dies: *intra* muros.
Juxta,	*near;*	Tumŭlus Hectŏris est *juxta* Trojam.
Ob,	*for;*	Faciam id *ob* suum emolumentum.
Penes,	*in the power of;*	Omnia sunt *penes* Deum.
Per,	*through;*	Nauta agit navim *per* mare, et *per* scopŭlos.
	by;	Servitium interdicĭtur *per* natūram et *per* leges.
	with permission of;	Non facies id *per* me.
Pone,	*behind;*	Manus vinctæ sunt[1] *pone* ejus tergum.
Post,	*after;*	*Post* mortem est judicium.
Præter,	*except;*	Omnes, *præter* unum, condemnavērunt eum.
	before;	Hector occīsus est[2] *præter* oculos Trojanōrum.
	contrary to;	Recēpi tuas epistŏlas *præter* expectatiōnem.
Prope,[3]	*near;*	Siste *prope* me.
	about;	Sere frumentum *prope* mensem Junii.
Propter,	*near*, or *by the side of;*	Amnis Eurōtas fluit *propter* Lacedæmŏnem.
	on account of;	Amo te *propter* vestram sinceritātem.
Secundum,	*after, next to;*	Ama tuos parentes *secundum* Deum.
	according to;	Mors est *secundum* natūram.
Secus,	*by, along;*	Processit[4] *secus* viam ad Romam.
Supra,	*above, over;*	Nubes sunt *supra* nos.

[1] See *vincio.* [2] For *occīsus est*, see *occīdo.* Observe that the penult is long in this word, so as to distinguish it from *occĭdo*, which means to *sit.*

[3] *Prope* perhaps is rather an adverb: when it governs an accusative *ad* is understood. However, as it is frequently used alone, it may be classed with the prepositions [4] See procēdo

Trans,	*over, across;*	Via ad Britanniam est *trans* Atlanticum mare.
Ultra,	*beyond;*	Ille est *ultra* puerilem ætátem.
Usque,	*as far as;*	Tendébat *usque* Romam.
Versus,	*towards;*	Cæsar duxit exercítum *versus* Brundusium.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Q. How many prepositions govern the Ablative?

A. Thirteen.

EXAMPLES.

A, Ab, Abs,	*by;*	Clodius occisus est *a* Milóne.
	from;	Cicĕro accépit maxĭmos[1] honóres *a* Románis.
Absque,	*without;*	Judex nunquam puníret *absque* testimoniis.
Coram,	*before, in the presence of;*	Habuit oratiónem *coram* omnĭbus.
Cum,	*with;*	Populus Románus gessit[2] bellum *cum* Jugurthâ.
De,	*of, concerning;*	Grotius scripsit[3] librum *de* jure pacis et belli.
	from;	Nihil relictum est[4] *de* tanto patrimonio.
	according to;	Bonus puer faciet omnia *de* voluntáte ejus parentûm.[5]
E, Ex,	*from;*	Aromăta veniunt *ex* Indiâ.
	according to;	Condemnabátur *e* sententiâ judĭcis.
Palam,	*before, in the presence of;*	Demosthĕnes habuit oratiónem de Philippo *palam* Athenienslbus.
Præ,	*before;*	Antonius tulit[6] pugiónem *præ* se.
	in comparison with;	Bonus vir, quamvis pauper, est felix *præ* malo viro, quamvis dives est.
Pro,	*for;*	Dedi viginti minas *pro* his libris.
	in favor of;	Cicĕro fecit verba *pro* Milóne.
Sine,	*without;*	Nihil magnum agĭtur[7] *sine* periculo.

[1] See *magnus.* [2] See *gero.* [3] See *scribo.*
[4] See *relinquo.* [5] See page 18, last line.
[6] *Tulit* is the 3d per. sing. perf. ind. of the irregular verb *fero*, and means, 'he carried.' See Appendix. [7] See *ago.*

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. How many Prepositions govern the *Accusative* and *Ablative?*

A. Five.

EXAMPLES.

Clam,	*secretly, unknown to;*	(acc.) Face nihil *clam* tuos parentes.
		(abl.) Cicĕro vidit Fulviam *clam* conspiratorĭbus.
In,	*to;*	(acc.) Milĭtes vocabantur *in* arma.
	into;	(acc.) Milĭtes ruēbant *in* pugnam.
	against;	(acc.) Deus est irātus *in* malos.
	in;	(abl.) Sunt multa templa *in* Româ.
	towards;	(abl.) Bonus vir est lenis *in* hoste.
	within;	(abl.) Vidēbo te *in* paucis diēbus.
Sub,	*under;*	(acc.) Græci pugnābant cum Trojānis *sub* muros Trojæ.
	beneath;	(abl.) Venātor manet *sub* frigĭdo Jove.*
Subter,	*beneath;*	(acc.) Margaritæ sunt *subter* mare.
	under;	(abl.) Græci oppugnavērunt muros *subter* testudĭne.
Super,	*above;*	(acc.) Domĭnus est *super* servum.
	beyond;	(acc.) Græcia est *super* Italiam.
	upon;	(abl.) Dormias cum me *super* virĭdi fronde.
	about;	(abl.) Scripsit ad me *super* libris.

PREPOSITION GOVERNING THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Q. What Preposition is there which governs the Genitive plural, and the Ablative of both numbers?

A. Tenus.

Q. What is there peculiar to this preposition?

A. It is always *put after* the noun which it governs.

---

*See Jupĭter.

EXAMPLES.

Tenus, with an Ablative.

Tenus, *up to, as far as;* abdĭdit* ensem capŭlo tenus.
fæce tenus: lacertis tenus.

Tenus, with a Genitive.

Tenus, *down to;* pedum tenus.
as far as; labiōrum tenus.

INTERJECTIONS.

Q. What is an *Interjection?*

A. An *Interjection* is an indeclinable word, *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind; as Oh! *Ah!* Eheu, *alas!* Euge, *well done!*

CONJUNCTIONS.

Q. What is a *Conjunction?*

A. A *Conjunction* is an indeclinable word that serves to join words and sentences together; as, et, *and;* sed, *but;* aut, *or.*

Sex *et* sex sunt duodĕcim.
Six and *six are twelve.*
Tu legis Virgilium, *sed* ego lego Cicerōnem.
You read Virgil, but *I read Cicero.*

---

* *Abdĭdit* from *abdo.*

SYNTAX.

Q. WHAT is *Syntax?*

A. Syntax is that part of Grammar which relates to the construction of words in sentences, and tells us how to put them rightly together.

Q. From what does it take its name?

A. From two Greek words, *taxis*, (ταξις) which means *the act of placing*, and *sūn*, (συν) which means *together:* thus *Syntax* is *the act of placing together* words in sentences.

Q. What relations have words to one another?

A. Two: *Concord* and *Government.*

Q. What is *Concord?*

A. Concord is when one word agrees with another in some particulars, as in gender, number, person, and case.

Q. What is *Government?*

A. Government is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case or mode, in order to govern it.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

Q. What are the *General Principles of Syntax?*

A. 1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood, by a verbal adjective, or by a verb.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

GENERAL RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.

Q. Are the words in the Latin language placed in sentences in the natural English order?

A. They are not, but are arranged in such a manner as to make the sentence sound most harmoniously.

Q. Why does not this manner of collocation cause confusion in the sense?

A. Because the endings of the nouns, and the variations of the adjectives and verbs, show their relation, and direct in what manner each word should be taken in.

Q. Give an example.

A. Labor (2) omnia (4) improbus (1) vincit. (3)
labour all things persevering conquers.

If these Latin words be construed in the order in which they stand, they make no sense: but if they be construed as they are numbered, that is, according to the *General Rules of Construction*, a correct English sentence is made, which is, *persevering labour conquers all things.**

---

*The Latin language, from its admitting so much transposition possesses a great advantage over the English. Thus we can say *Han*

Q. What are some of the *General Rules of Construction?*

A. *Rule* 1.

Construe the nominative case first, with the adjective or words that belong to it, if there be any:—then, the verb:—then, the word or words which the verb governs:—lastly, the preposition, if there be any, with the word depending on it.

Rule 2.

A genitive case is usually construed after another noun.

Rule 3.

An infinitive mode is generally construed after another verb.

Rule 4.

An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed *before* its noun.

---

nibălem vicit Scipio, or *Scipio vicit Hannibălem*, or *Scipio Hannibălem vicit*, or *vicit Scipio Hannibălem*. The sense is the same, *Scipio conquered Hannibal.* Because, according to the Rules of Construction, in whatever order the words may be placed, we must take in the nominative, *Scipio*, first; then the verb, *vicit;* then the word which the verb governs, which is the accusative *Hannibălem.* But in English we can state the fact only by one order, *Scipio conquered Hannibal.* If we reverse the order and say *Hannibal conquered Scipio*, we state what is not true. If we say *Scipio Hannibal conquered*, or *Hannibal Scipio conquered*, we state an ambiguous proposition, or write a sentence which has no meaning. The chief reason why the Latin admits of this transposition, is the changes which nouns undergo in their different cases. In Latin the nominative of a verb would be altered if made the object of it, as, nom. *Hannĭbal*, acc. *Hannibălem.* But in English it would remain the same; as when we say *Hannibal conquered Scipio, Hannibal* is the nominative; should we say *Scipio conquered Hannibal, Hannibal* would be the object of the verb, but would not be changed in its form.

Rule 5.

If an adjective or participle govern a word *after* it, it must be construed after its noun.

Rule 6.

In an ablative absolute, construe the noun *before* the adjective or participle which agrees with it.

Rule 7.

An adverb is not to be construed with a noun, but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or a participle.

Rule 8.

After a preposition constantly look for an accusative or ablative case.

Rule 9.

The word governed must generally be construed *immediately* after the word which governs it.

CONCORD.

Q. What words agree together in sentences?

A. 1. A noun with another noun. 2. An adjective with a noun. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one noun with another.*

RULE I. Nouns signifying the same thing, agree in case.

Examples.

Cicĕro orātor.	Cato, vir fortis.
Urbs Athēnæ.	Deus, auctor omnium.[1]

[1] *Omnium* is an adjective in the genitive plural, and means *of all*, and agrees with *negotiōrum* understood. As it has no noun expressed with which it agrees, it means *of all things*.

Urbis Athenārum.
Cæsar imperātor.
Philosŏphi, magistri virtūtis.
Cicerōni oratōri.
Cæsărem imperatōrem.

2. *Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.*

RULE II. Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles, agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Latin Examples to be translated into English.

Vir bonus.
Virōrum bonōrum.
Viris bonis.
Puer studiōsus.
Puĕro studiōso.
Puĕri studiōsi.
Filia cara.
Filiam caram.
Filias caras.
Mater benigna.
Spes ultĭma.
Legis divīnæ.
Tonĭtru terribĭle.
Nomĭna propria.
Æstatĭbus calĭdis.
Proxĭmo anno.
Inclytissĭma templa.
Cariōris amīci.
Gravissĭmi casus.
Quinque mensĭbus.
Minĭmi puĕri.

English Examples to be rendered into Latin.

In a fertile field.
Of learned men.
On slippery ice.
With the best boys.
The handsomest women.
Of a larger city.
The smallest feet.
With a treacherous friend.
Ager fertĭlis.
Vir doctus.
Glacies lubrĭcus.
Bonus puer.
Pulcher fœmĭna.
Magnus urbs.
Parvus pes.
Perfĭdus amīcus.

Divine laws, (nom.)	Lex divīnus.
The bright sun, (acc.)	Sol clarus.
A careful husbandman, (acc.)	Agricŏla provĭdus.
With a faithful friend.	Amīcus fidēlis.
Of a swift horse.	Equus celer.
To an ancient king.	Rex antīquus.
Fair women, (nom.)	Fœmĭna pulcher.

3. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

RULE III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person.

Latin Examples.

Ventus spirat.	Ego vidēbo.
Luna lucet.	Veni, vidi, vici.[1]
Ignis urit.	Puĕri scribunto.
Aves volant.	Fulgēbat luna.
Domĭnus jubet.	Surge.—Legĭto.
Sol occĭdit.	Lepŏres cucurrissent.
Milĭtes vulnerantur.	Venient juvĕnes.
Servus paret.	Disce aut discēde.
Canis custōdit.	Sit lux, et lux fuit.
Bonus homo amātur.	Vox audĭtur.
Sol splendet.	Puĕri docentor.
Puĕri erudiuntur.	Hostes victi erant.
Milĭtes pugnābant.	Tempŏra mutantur.
Troja fuit.[2]	Domus ædificabĭtur.
Equus currĭto.	Caput tegerētur.
Crimĭna puniantur.	Panis emerētur.
Gemma reperiātur.	Hostes capti essent.

[1] For *vici* see *vinco*.

[2] See *sum*.

English Examples.

Our master comes.	Noster magister venio.
The good boy learns.	Bonus puer disco.
The body is mortal.	Corpus mortālis sum.
Death is certain.	Mors certus sum.
Life is uncertain.	Vita incertus sum.
The earth is round.	Terra sum rotundus.
The stars are bright.	Stella sum clarus.
Time flies.	Tempus fugio.
I was weeping.	Fleo.
The king will conquer.	Rex vinco.
May fortune favour.	Fortūna faveo.
Good boys will be praised.	Bonus puer laudo.
The oars are broken.	Remus frango.
The soldiers will be killed.	Miles interficio.
Let kings be honoured.	Rex honōro.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

RULE IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te[1] valēre,
I am glad that you are well.
Virgilius jussĕrat[2] sua carmĭna cremāri,
Virgil ordered that his poems should be burnt.

Latin Examples.

Volo te venisse. Scio Petrum flēre.
Amor jussit me scribĕre.

---

[1] To the noun before the infinitive, must always be prefixed the English particle *that*.

[2] *Jussĕrat* from *jubeo*.

Ferunt[1] Anaxagŏram nunquam risisse.[2]

Scio Regem regnāre. Scis me amāre verum.[3]

Sepulchrum Cyri aperīri Alexander[4] jussit.

Audivĭmus Epaminondam esse modestum, prudentem, clementem, patientemque.[5]

Virgilius dicit labōrem vincĕre omnia.

Scimus solem esse lucem mundi.

Auctōres dicunt Helĕnam fuisse causam belli Trojāni.

English Examples.

I hear that you are ill.	Audio tu ægrōto.
The messenger relates that a battle has been fought, and that the enemies have been defeated.	Nuntius narro prœlium pugno, et hostis vinco.
I confess that I have sinned.	Confiteor ego pecco.
We say that death will come.	Dico mors venio.
Do you see that the sun shines?	Video sol luceo?
Horace says that anger is a short madness.	Horatius dico ira sum brevis furor.
I am glad that thou hast returned.	Gaudeo tu redeo.

---

[1] *Ferunt* is from the irregular verb *fero*, (see Appendix,) and means *they say*.

[2] *Risisse* from *rideo*.

[3] *Verum* is in the accusative by rule 18th.

[4] See the first rule of construction.

[5] *Que* is a conjunction, which is always added to the end of the latter of two words, instead of being placed between them: it is equivalent to *et*.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

RULE V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing.*

Latin Examples.

Ego sum discĭpŭlus. Illa incēdit regīna.
Tu vocāris Joannes. Scio vos esse discĭpŭlos.
Anĭma est immortālis. Vis consuetudĭnis est magna.
Magni princĭpes existimantur felicissĭmi, paupĕres existimantur miserrĭmi.
Scio illum hăbēri[1] sapientem.
Dolor non est maxĭmum[2] malum.
Usus est optĭmus[3] magister.
Cicĕro fuit clarus[4] ōrātor.
Delector dici bonus et prudens vir.
Deus est spirĭtus. Virtus est pretiōsa gemma.

English Examples.

Studious boys will be learned men. Studiōsus puer sum doctus vir.
Justice is a most excellent[5] virtue. Justitia sum præstans virtus.
America is called the new world. Americ̆a voco novus mundus.

---

[1] Illum habēri, *that he is esteemed. Habēri* from *habeo.*

[2] *Maxĭmum*, superlative degree, of *magnus.*

[3] *Optĭmus*, superlative, of *bonus.*

[4] *Clarus*, *famous.*

[5] *Most excellent* is of the superlative degree: præstans, *excellent;* præstantior, *more excellent;* præstantissĭmus, *most excellent.* This word must be *præstantissĭma*, in the feminine gender, to agree with *virtus*, virtue, which is feminine.

A true friend is a great treasure.	Amīcus verus thesaurus sum magnus.
Achilles was a Grecian general.	Achilles sum Græcus dux.
Hector was a Trojan general.	Hector sum Trojānus dux.
Crœsus was a rich man, but Solon was a wise man.	Crœsus sum dives, sed Solon sum fortis vir.
Pompey was named "the great."	Pompeius voco magnus.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

RULE VI. One Noun governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Noun signifies a different thing from the former.*)

Latin Examples.

Amor Dei.	Fons aquæ.
Domus Cæsăris.	Ratio hominis.
Lex Natūræ.	Juba leōnis.
Virtus est perfectio ratiōnis.	Natūra est mater omnium.
Sol est lux mundi.	Juno Jovis[1] conjux erat.
Magna est vis conscientiæ.	Honor est merces virtūtis.

Philosophia est mater omnium bonārum artium.
Dei timor est sapientiæ principium.
Neptūnus est numen aquārum.
Multitūdo morbōrum est infinīta.
Variĕtas linguārum est magna.
Justitia est regīna omnium virtūtum.

[1] See Jupiter.

English Examples.

The wonders of the world are seven:	Miracŭlum mundus sum septem.
1. The Pyramids of Egypt,	Pyrămis Ægyptus.
2. The Tower of Pharos,	Turris Pharus.
3. The Walls of Babylon,	Murus Babȳlon.
4. The Temple of Diana,	Templum Diāna.
5. The Sepulchre of Mausōlus,	Sepulchrum Mausōlus.
6. The Colossus of Rhodes,	Colossus Rhodus.
7. The Statue of Olympian Jupiter.	Statua Jupĭter Olympius.
Piety is the foundation of all the virtues.	Piĕtas sum omnis virtus fundamentum.
Anger is the beginning of madness.	Ira sum dementia initium.
Envy is the attendant of virtue.	Invidia sum comes virtus.
Sleep is the image of death.	Somnus sum mors imāgo.
The event of war is uncertain.	Eventus bellum sum incertus.
Helen was the cause of the Trojan war.	Helĕna causa sum bellum Trojānus.

RULE VII. But if the latter Noun have an Adjective of description joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir	summæ	prudentiæ, Gen. or,
	summâ	prudentiâ, Abl.

a man of the greatest prudence.

Latin Examples.

Vir summæ prudentiæ. Puer probâ indŏle.
Consul parvo et pravo ănĭmo.
Cimon Atheniensis fuit vir summâ liberalitāte.
Epaminondas fuit dux incredibĭli virtūte.
Amo puĕrum ingenii præclāri.
Cicero fuit vir miti ingenio.
Cato vir magnâ auctoritāte.
Diogĕnes fuit acerbâ natūrâ.
Magister facĭlè docet puĕros ingeniis acūtis.
Gallus quidam, eximiâ corpŏris magnitudĭne.

English Examples.

A man of no experience in war.	Vir nullus stipendium[1] bellum.
A woman of high birth.	Mulier magnus ortus.
Athens was a city of great splendour.	Athēnæ sum urbs magnus splendor.
He was a boy of a studious disposition.	Ille sum puer studiōsus indŏles.
She was a girl of great modesty.	Ille sum puella eximius modestia.
Cicero was an orator of consummate eloquence.	Cicĕro sum orātor præclārus eloquentia.
Hannibal was a general of wonderful courage.	Hannĭbal sum imperātor virtus admirabĭlis.
Fabius was a general of great prudence.	Fabius sum dux magnus prudentia.

[1] *Experience in war* may be rendered by the genitive of the noun *stipendium*, 2d declension, neuter; it means literally, *soldiers' wages.*

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

RULE VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender, without a Noun with which it agrees, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ,
much of money, or *much money*.
Plus eloquentiæ,
more of eloquence, or *more eloquence*.

Latin Examples.

Habeo tantum otii. Assequēbar tantum boni.
Est multum mali in exemplo.
Est multum mali in discordiâ.
Narrābo cùm habeo aliquid novi.
Quid consilii capies?
Decrēvit quondam Senatus, ut Lucius Opimius vidēret, ne quid[1] respublĭca detrimenti capĕret.
Gloria habet plus molestiæ quam voluptātis.
Qui[2] habet paulŭlum pecuniæ, habet etiam paulŭlum fidēi.

English Examples.

What is the news? Quis novus (*gen. sing.*) sum?
He has no sincerity: (*nothing of sincerity.*) Ille habeo nullus sincērus.
How much money have you? (*how much of money.*) Quantus pecunia habeo?
There is very great good[3] in friendship. Sum multus bonus in amicitia.

[1] Quid detrimenti, *any injury.*
[2] Qui to be rendered by *he who.*
[3] Very great good, *plurimum boni.*

He has very little[1] courage, but very much honesty.
Ille habeo parvus fortitūdo, sed multus probĭtas.

Where there is most study there is least noise.
Ubi sum multus studium, ibi sum parvus clamor.

RULE IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ,
there is need of money.

Latin Examples.

Est usus virĭbus.
Opus est monitōre.
Opus est magistratĭbus.
Nihil opus est oratiōne longâ.
Clamas, cum opus est tacĭto.[2]
Si vis esse doctus, opus est diligentiâ.

English Examples.

There is need of brevity.
Sum brevĭtas opus.

There is need of thy authority.
Opus sum tuus auctorĭtas.

There is need of your attention and prudence.
Opus sum vester attentio et prudentia.

There is no occasion for disputes.
Nihil usus sum lis.

There is no occasion for words.
Nihil opus sum verbum.

In trouble there is need of the counsels of a friend.
In dolor opus sum amĭcus consilium.

---

[1] 'Very little' to be rendered by the superlative.

[2] *Tacito*, an adjective used for a noun, meaning *silence*.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

RULE X. Verbal Adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, require the genitive; as,

Avĭdus gloriæ,
desirous of glory.

Latin Examples.

Bonus[1] est ignārus fraudis. Scipio fuit expertus belli.[2]
Miles Romānus fuit patiens[3] algōris et famis.
Ejus mens est conscia recti.[4]
Avārus[1] est studiōsus pecuniæ.
Illa est laudis avĭda.
Bonus[1] est memor beneficiōrum.
Cæsar fuit cupĭdus triumphi.
Posterĭtas nunquam erit immĕmor hujus rei.
Natūra homĭnum est novitātis avĭda.
Anĭmus, futūri anxius, calamitōsus est.
Tempus est edax rerum.

English Examples.

The mind of men is ignorant of fate.	Nescius mens homo fatum.
I am not unmindful of your commands.	Non sum tuus mandātum immĕmor.

[1] *Vir* is here understood. Translate bonus, *a good man.*

[2] *Belli* literally means *of war*, but in connexion with the adjective *expertus*, English idiom requires it to be translated *in war*. It very frequently happens that the genitive and dative cannot be rendered by their respective signs, *of* and *to*, or *for*, without doing violence to the established modes of expression in our own language.

[3] Patiens, *patient of*, that is, *able to bear.*

[4] *Recti*, an adjective, used for a noun, and means *of right*, that is, *of rectitude.*

Cæsar was skilled in many things.[1]	Cæsar doctus sum multus res.
A soldier experienced in war.	Miles bellum expertus.
The mind is capable of every virtue.	Mens omnis virtus sum capax.
Many are more desirous of disputing than of the truth.	Multus sum dispŭto[2] quam verĭtas avĭdus.
Live mindful of old age and death.	Vivo memor senectus et mors.
Crœsus was most greedy of gold.	Aurum avĭdus Crœsus sum.

RULE XI. Partitives,[3] comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Optĭmus omnium,	Unus nostrûm,
the best of all.	*one of us.*

Latin Examples.

Quis mortalium?	Multæ arbŏrum.
Alĭquis philosophōrum.	Una musārum.
Senior fratrum.	Quis nostrûm.
Octāvus sapientûm.	

---

[1] *In many things* must be rendered by the *genitive*, in connexion with the adjective skilful.

[2] Use the genitive of the gerund. See Rule 32, Obs. 2d.

[3] Words are called *partitives* when they mean *part* of any number: thus, *alĭquis* is a *partitive*, because it means *some one:* as, alĭquis philosophōrum, *some one of the philosophers*, that is, some *part* of that class of men. *Comparatives* and *superlatives* are adjectives of the comparative and superlative degrees. *Interrogatives* ask a question. *Numerals* define some number.

Cicĕro fuit doctissĭmus Romanōrum.
Aristotĕles et Plato omnium Græcōrum fuērunt doctissĭmi.
Pavo est formosissĭma omnium avium.
Stultissĭma animalium sunt lanāta.
Beneficiōrum[1] maxĭma sunt ea quæ a parentĭbus accipĭmus.
Nemo mortalium omnĭbus horis sapit.

English Examples.

Calumny is the most baneful of all things.	Omnis res sum nocens calumnia.
Plato was the most learned of the Grecian philosophers.	Plato philosŏphus Græcus sum doctus.
The Amazon is the greatest of all rivers.	Amăzon omnis flumen sum magnus.
Death is the end of all things.[2]	Mors sum omnis finis.
Which of you were here yesterday?	Quis tu hic herè sum?
He is the elder of the brothers.	Ille sum frater senex.
The lion is the bravest of animals.	Leo sum anĭmal fortis.
The first of the Roman kings was Romulus.	Prior rex Romānus sum Romŭlus.
Demosthĕnes was the most distinguished of the Grecian orators.	Græcus orātor præstans sum Demosthĕnes.

[1] Beneficiōrum, *of all kindnesses.*

[2] *Of all things*, to be rendered by *omnium* only: the word *things* is seldom expressed in Latin, but the adjective is put in the neuter gender, and agrees with a noun understood.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

RULE XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c., govern the Dative; or, any adjective may govern the Dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Utĭlis bello,	Amīcus omnĭbus,
useful for war.	*friendly to all.*

Latin Examples.

Utĭlis bello. Perniciōsus reipublĭcæ.
Simĭlis patri. Nil mortalĭbus arduum est.
Niger est color contrarius albo. Ea res vobis utĭlis est.
Quis amicior quam frater fratri?
Nemo fuit reipublĭcæ perniciosior.
Tempus vobis est opportunissĭmum.
Gallia est contigua Hispaniæ.
Omnes ancipĭti fortūnæ obnoxii sunt.
Gens Trojāna fuit Junōni inimica.
Catilīna fuit omnĭbus bonis invīsus.
Urtĭcæ proxĭma sæpe rosa est.

English Examples.

A good boy is kind to animals.	Bonus puer animal sum lenis.
He was grateful to his[1] patron.	Ille sum is patrōnus gratus.
Spain is next to Portugal.	Hispania Lusitania sum propior.

[1] *His* is rendered in Latin by *ejus*, of him; the genitive of the adjective pronoun *is, ea, id*, he, she, it; see page 44.

Death is like sleep.	Mors somnus simĭlis sum.
The stars are convenient to mariners.	Stella sum nauta commŏdus.
Death is common to all.	Mors omnis commūnis sum.
A good man is merciful to his enemies.	Bonus is inimīcus sum mitis.
Nothing is difficult to a brave man.	Nihil fortis sum difficĭlis.
A rose is often next to a thorn.	Urtīca propior sæpe rosa sum.

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

RULE XIII. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, prædĭtus, captus,* and *fretus;* also *natus, satus, ortus, edĭtus,* and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre, Contentus parvo, Ortus regĭbus,
worthy of honour. content with little. descended from kings

Latin Examples

Cicĕro fuit dignus honōre.
Ille dives[1] qui contentus est parvo.
Ille summo magistrātu prædĭtus fuit.
Homērus fuit captus[2] ocŭlis.
Milĭtes suis viribus freti, vicērunt.
Senātus Romānus Catilīnam morte dignissĭmum esse decrēvit.
Mecænas fuit edĭtus regĭbus.
Parvo contenta natūra est.

[1] *Est* is understood.

[2] *Captus* is the perfect passive participle of *capio*, and means *taken*; when it means *deprived of*

Achilles[1] fuit natus Thetĭde.[2]
Romŭlus[3] fuit satus divinâ stirpe.
Studiōsus puer est dignus laude.

English Examples.

Learn[4] to be content with little.	Disco sum parvus contentus.
How happens it,[5] that no one lives[6] contented with his lot?	Quis fio, ut nemo is sors vivo contentus?
Those only are happy who are endowed with virtue.	Qui virtus prædĭtus sum, solus bĕātus.
Catiline[7] was descended from a noble family.	Catilīna nobĭlis stirps ortus sum.
Do nothing unworthy of a man.	Facio nihil vir indignus.
Relying on his own strength, he conquered.	Fretus suus vis, vinco.
He who is content with his own is truly the most opulent.	Qui suus (*plur.*) contentus sum, is verè dives.

[1] Achilles was one of the Grecian generals who went to the Trojan war. He was killed with an arrow, by Paris.

[2] *Thetĭde* from *Thetis*, who was one of the sea deities.

[3] Romŭlus was the founder of Rome, 753 years before Christ.

[4] *Learn* is in the imperative mode—put the Latin in the 2d pers. sing.

[5] *How happens it*, is a phrase to be rendered by *quî fit*; *quî* is an adverb, for the ablative quo, *by what*, modo, *manner*, being understood: quo modo, *in what manner*, or *by what means*. *Fit* is from the irregular verb fio, *to be done, to happen;* indicative mode, present tense, 3d person singular; fio, fis, fit: *plural*, fimus, fitis, fiunt. See Appendix.

[6] The conjunction *ut* requires that *vivo* should be put in the *subjunctive mode.*

[7] Catiline was an infamous Roman who conspired with others to destroy his country.

He who is kind to the poor deserves praise.	Qui pauper benevŏlus, is dignus sum honor.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

RULE XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Omnia sunt plena Dei,
all things are full of God.
Ille est inops virtūte, *or* virtūtis,
he is void of virtue.

Latin Examples.

Plenus iræ.
Inops ratiōne.
Ille est abundans divitiis.
Omnia Dei sunt plena.
Nemo est vacuus molestiâ.
Decem naves fuērunt frumento onustæ.
Diogĕnes fuit sapientiâ quàm pecuniâ locupletior.
Terra est ferax Cerĕris.[1]
Quanquam pauper argenti et auri, multum honorātus est.
Mesopotamia est regio aquārum egīna.

English Examples.

Italy was then full of Grecian arts and discipline.	Italia tunc ars et disciplīna Græcus sum plenus.
Strength, without counsel, is nothing.	Vis, consilium expers, nihil sum.
Although destitute of the comforts of life, he was happy.	Etsi vita solatium inops, sum felix.
Brutes are without reason.	Bestia ratio sum expers.

[1] Ceres was the goddess of corn and tillage, and is here put for corn itself, by a figure of speech called *metonymy*.

I see that you will be[1] free from all danger.	Video tu fore periculum omnis expers.
The harbour is very full of ships.	Portus navis plenus sum.
He was laden with the spoils of the East.	Ille Oriens spolium sum onustus.

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

1. VERBS GOVERNING ONE CASE ONLY.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

RULE XV. The verb *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis,
it is of the king, or, *it is the king's*; that is,
it is the property of the king.

Latin Examples.

Est[2] fortis animi non perturbāri in rebus aspĕris.[3]
Est insipientis non velle[4] discĕre.
Hic hortus est patris mei.

---

[1] *That you will be*; use the accusative before the infinitive *fore*.

[2] *Est* is here used impersonally, or without any nominative. But strictly speaking, the latter clause of the sentence, *non perturbāri in rebus aspĕris*, is the nominative. For the nominative is always the answer to the question, what? So here the question is, what is the part of a brave mind? and the answer, non perturbāri in rebus aspĕris, *not to be troubled in adversity*, is the nominative to *est*.

[3] In rebus aspĕris, literally means, *in rough* or *severe affairs*, in *hardships*, or elegantly, *in adversity*.

[4] Velle is the infinitive of the irregular verb *volo*, infinitive *velle*, perfect *volui*, *to be willing*, or *to wish*.

Est militum parēre suo duci.[1]
Hominis est errāre. Hi libri sunt mei sobrīni.
Temeritas est florentis ætātis,[2] prudentia[3] senectūtis.
Amīci est adjuvāre ejus amīcum.
Est nullīus, nisi insipientis, in errōre perseverāre.
Est oratōris apte, distincte, ornātēque dicĕre.

English Examples.

This house is my father's, but that orchard is a neighbour's.	Hic domus sum pater meus; sed iste pomarium sum vicīnus.
The books are new my brother's.	Liber sum meus frater.
To contemn riches[4] is the part of a great mind.	Divitiæ contemno sum magnus anĭmus.
It is the part of a foolish boy to neglect his studies.[5]	Sum stultus puer studium neglĭgo.
It is the part of a master to teach.	Sum magister doceo.
It is the duty of him to speak, but of them to hear.	Is loquor sum, sed ille audio

RULE XVI. *Misereor, miseresco,* and *satăgo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre tuōrum civium,
Pity your countrymen.

---

[1] *Duci* from *dux*, in the dative, and governed by *parēre*, by observation 5th, under rule 17th.

[2] Florentis ætātis, literally, *of flourishing age;* elegantly, *of youth.*

[3] *Est* is here understood.

[4] Put the Latin of *riches* in the accusative case, by rule 18th.

[5] Put the Latin of *studies* also in the accusative.

Latin Examples.

Satăgit suārum rerum.
Miserēre labōrum[1] tantōrum.
Miserescīte regis. Est boni viri, paupĕrum miserēri.
Miserēre domûs labentis.[2]
Irārum et molestiārum muliebrium Xantippe per diem per que noctem satagēbat.

English Examples.

I pity his distress for food.[3]	Misereor is esuries.
Pity my brother.	Misereor frater meus.
Death pities neither rich nor poor.	Mors nec dives nec pauper miseresco.
He who is always busy in his studies, will be learned.	Qui studium suus satăgo, sum doctus.

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

RULE XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio,
an end has come to the empire.

Latin Examples.

Anĭmus[4] redit hostĭbus.	Mala eveniunt bonis.[5]
Non nobis solum nati sumus.	Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.

[1] Labōrum here means *hardships*.

[2] Labentis is the present participle of the deponent verb *labor*.

[3] *Distress for food*, esuries, noun, *fem.* 5th declension.

[4] *Anĭmus* here means *courage*.

[5] When the adjective is thus used without a substantive expressed, *homo*, or *negotium*, is generally understood; as in this case *mala* means *evils*, that is, mala negotia, *evil things*; bonis, *to good*, that is, bonis hominĭbus, *to good men*.

3 4 1 2
Hæret latĕri lethālis arundo.
Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito.
Natūra animalĭbus varia tegumenta tribuit.
Homĭni soli avaritia data est.

English Examples.

Fortune is prejudicial to the mind.	Fortūna officio mens.
To give way to the time is the part of a wise man.	Tempus cedo sapiens sum.
A fleet of seventy ships was given to Miltiădes.	Classis septuaginta navis Miltiădes dedo. (*perf. pass.*)
Praise is due to virtue.	Laus virtus debeo.

[The dative, however, cannot always be rendered by the signs TO and FOR. Under this rule, therefore, it will be necessary to give, in a few observations, such verbs as cannot be followed by these signs.]

Observation First. SUM and its compounds govern the dative, (except *possum*;) as,

Præfuit exercitui,	Adfuit precĭbus.
he commanded the army.	*he was present at prayers.*

Latin Examples.

Adĕro[1] tuis rebus difficillĭmis.
Cicĕro præfuit toti provinciæ.
Nec sibi nec altĕris prosunt.
Nostro sermōni[2] interfuit.
Pudor non obfuit oratiōni.

---

[1] *Adĕro* from adsum.

[2] *Sermōni* here means *conversation.*

Dum alĭquid virium[1] tibi supĕrest.
Creāti sunt decem prætōres, qui exercitui præessent.

English Examples.

In this man there was much vanity.	Hic homo (*dat.*) multum[2] vanĭtas (*gen.*) insum.
Brutus commanded the fleet.	Brutus classis præsum.
Cicero was not present at the battle of Pharsalia.	Cicĕro Pharsalia pugna non adsum.

Observation Second. EST taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,

Liber est mihi,
a book is to me, that is, *I have a book.*
Dico libros esse mihi,
I say that books are to me, that is, *I say that I have books.*

Latin Examples.

Est mihi pater.	Sunt nobis mitia poma.
Magna vis est leōni.	Est mihi nomen Alexandri.

Antiquissĭmis hominĭbus specus erant pro domĭbus.
Sed Macedonĭbus assidua certamĭna cum Thracĭbus et Illyriis fuēre.

English Examples.

I have à good knife.	Bonus culter ego sum.
I have sweet verses.	Sum ego dulcis carmen.
The hare has great swiftness.	Magnus sum velocĭtas lepus.
The Romans had many battles with the Carthagenians.	Romānus cum Carthagenien-sis multus certāmen sum.

[1] *Virium* from *vis*; governed by *alĭquid*, by rule 8th.
[2] See Rule 8th.

Observation Third. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Satisfēcit mihi per litĕras. Dii tibi benefaciant.[1]
Maledixit mihi sine[2] ullâ causâ.
Tuis amīcis malefăcis.
Pulchrum est benefacĕre reipublĭcæ.
Tempus est ludĕre cum seriis rebus satisfecerĭmus.

English Examples.

Do evil to no one.	Nemo malefacio.
It is delightful to serve your friends.	Gratus sum benefacio amīcus.
He discharged his duty.	Is (*gen.*) officium satisfacio.

Observation Fourth. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PER, POST, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative.

Latin Examples.

Annue[3] audacĭbus cœptis.
Huc vestris oris pauci adnavĭmus.
Antecellit omnĭbus in cursu.
Puer gestit antecellĕre parĭbus.
Mors immĭnet omnĭbus.

---

[1] Observe to give to *benefaciant* the sign of the subjunctive mode, *may*, and put it before the English of *Dii*; as, *may the Gods*, &c.

[2] See the prepositions which govern the ablative.

[3] *Annue*, compounded of *ad* and *nuo*. In almost every case when the preposition is compounded with a verb, the last consonant of the preposition is changed into the consonant with which the verb begins; as, *immĭnet* for *inmĭnet*; *annue* for *adnue*; *officio* for *obficio*; this change is made to make the enunciation easier.

Nox prælio intervēnit.
Omnes occubuērunt morti.
Ego meis majorĭbus[1] præluxi.
Vir bonus succurrit misĕris.
Supervĕnit timĭdis juvenĭbus.
Nemo enim altĕri imperium volens concēdit.

English Examples.

Man excels all other animals.	Homo omnis cæter anĭmal antecēdo.
Mars presides over arms.	Mars arma præsideo.
During the conspiracy of Catiline, great danger impended over Cicero.	In Catilīna conjuratio magnus periculum Cicĕro impendeo.
Ariovistus interdicted the Romans from all Gaul.	Ariovistus omnis Gallia (*abl.*) Romānus interdīco.
Cæsar resolved to forbear fighting.	Cæsar prœlium supersedeo (*inf.*) statuo.

Observation Fifth. Verbs govern the dative which signify to *profit* or *hurt*; to *favour* or *assist*; to *command* and *obey*; to *serve* and *resist*; to *threaten* and to be *angry*; to *trust*.

Latin Examples.

Prospexit ejus salūti.	Rogo ut faveas mihi.
Nihil officiat[2] frugĭbus.	Mihi minabĭtur.
Bonus ejus amīcis succurret.	Fidit narratiōni.
Socrătes imperāvit cupiditatĭbus.	
Ille mihi succensuit sine causa.	

[1] *Majorĭbus* here means *ancestors*: those who have gone *before* us.

[2] See note 3, on the preceding page. This is the subjunctive in the sense of the imperative. Use, therefore, the sign *let*.

Multi Romanōrum Catilīnæ inceptis favēbant.
Helōtes[1] Spartānis famulāti sunt.
Dii hominĭbus succensuērunt. Rura mihi placent.
Misĕris succurrĕre disce.

English Examples.

No man can serve virtue and pleasure at the same time.	Voluptas simul et virtus nemo servio[2] possum.
I do not envy the fortune of any one.	Non ullus fortūna invideo.
The shades hurt the corn.	Umbra fruges noceo.
He displeased me the least.	Ego minĭme ille displiceo.
Whoever spares the bad hurts the good.	Ille bonus noceo qui malus pareo.
Confide in virtue, but distrust vice.	Confīdo virtus, sed diffīdo vitium.
A good boy will obey his parents.	Bonus puer is parens pareo.
It is the part of a master to command his servant, but of a servant to obey his master.	Est magister is servus impĕro, sed servus magister servio.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

RULE XVIII. An active Verb, or a Verb signifying actively, governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum,
love God.

[1] The Helots were a people whom the Spartans held in slavery, and treated with great cruelty.

[2] Use the infinitive.

Latin Examples.

Beneficia parant amīcos.	Deus mundum creāvit.
Romŭlus Romam fundāvit.	Virtus largītur tranquillĭtātem
Cæsar Pompeĭum vicit.	Labor omnĭa vincit.
Omnes amant aurum.	Honor artes alit.

Scipio delēvit Carthagĭnem.
Sol diem,[1] sed luna noctem regit.
Mors subĭta Achillem fortem exstinxit.
Doctrīna vitam suavem effĭcit.
Tuam diligentiam omnes admirantur.
Romāni omnes gentes vicērunt.

English Examples.

Alexander[2] vanquished Darius.	Alexander Darīus vinco.
Hannibal[3] conquered Italy.	Hannĭbal Italia vinco.
Fortune favours the brave.	Audax fortūna juvo.
One death awaits all men.	Unus mors omnis maneo.
Egypt produces crocodiles.	Ægyptus crocodĭlus gigno.
A wise son maketh a glad father.	Filius sapiens lætus pater facio.
All nations acknowledge a God.	Omnis natio Deus agnosco.
Despise pleasures.	Voluptas contemno.
The Egyptians worship animals.	Ægyptius anĭmal colo.
A good boy loves his book.	Bonus puer is liber amo.
Ninus founded the Assyrian empire.	Ninus imperium Assyrius fundo.

[1] *Regit* is here understood to govern *diem*.

[2] Alexander was a renowned Grecian general.

[3] Hannibal was the great Carthagenian general who led his victorious armies near the very gates of Rome.

Cyrus founded the Persian empire.	Cyrus imperium Persicus fundo.
Romulus founded the Roman empire.	Romulus Romanus imperium fundo.

RULE XIX. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis *or* lectionem,
I remember the lesson.

Latin Examples.

Vir bonus omnium injuriarum oblivisceretur.
Habes ducem sui oblitum.
Recordor tua consilia et benevolentiam.
Memini tuæ constantiæ.
Reminiscor veteris incommodi Romanorum.
Cæsar solet nihil oblivisci, nisi injurias.

1 3 8 4 5 9 7 6
Ut[1] verba parentis et vocem Anchisæ magni vultumque
2
recordor!

English Examples.

Remember that time.	Reminiscor ille tempus.
I have not forgotten to give to him the letters.	Non obliviscor is (*dat.*) epistola do.[2]
I recollect his countenance.	Reminiscor is vultus.
I remember your past kindnesses, and am grateful.	Memini tuus præteritus beneficium, (*plu.*) et gratus sum.
I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.	Memini, nec ille nox obliviscor.
God himself commands you to remember death.	Tu (*acc.*) memini (*perf. inf.*) mors, Deus ipse jubeo.

[1] *Ut* 'how.'
[2] Infinitive.

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

RULE XX. Verbs of *plenty* and *scarceness* for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,	Caret omni culpâ,
he abounds in riches.	*he is free from all fault.*

Latin Examples.

Sicilia affluit frumento. Pomis exuběrat annus.
Urbs peste caret. Consilio non eges.
Majōres nostri neque consilii neque audaciæ unquam eguēre.
Non tam artis indĭgent,[1] quàm labōris.
Hoc bellum indĭget celeritātis.

English Examples.

Many bad men[2] abound in gold and silver.	Multus malus aurum et argentum abundo.
He who[3] is destitute of virtue, wants all things.	Qui virtus careo, omnis (*gen.*) indigeo.
The time does not need such aid.	Tempus talis auxilium non egeo.
You shall not want my prayers.	Meus precis non egeo.
One wants a bridle, another[4] a spur.	Alter frænum, alter calcar egeo.
Show that death is free from all evil.	Ostendo mors (*acc.*) omnis malum careo. (*inf.*)

[1] *Indigeo* frequently governs the genitive.
[2] *Bad men*, to be rendered by *mali*, having *homines* understood.
[3] *He who*, to be rendered by *qui*, with *ille* understood.
[4] One—another, *alter—alter*.

RULE XXI. *Utor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

Utĭtur fraude,	Abutĭtur libris,
he uses deceit.	*he abuses books.*

Latin Examples.

Ille usus est his verbis.
Utĕre tuo judicio.
Quousque tandem abutēre,[1] Catilīna, nostrâ patientiâ.
Vitâ eternâ boni fruentur.
Vel imperatōre vel milĭte me utimĭni.
Epaminondas fortis milĭtis officĭo functus est.
Stultus puer libris abutĭtur.
Dii nec escis aut potionĭbus vescuntur.
Scythæ lacte et melle vescuntur; lanæ usus iis[2] ignōtus est, sed pellĭbus ferīnis utuntur.

English Examples.

I will discharge the duty of an interpreter.	Interpres munus fungor.
A wise man makes use *of*[3] reason.	Sapiens ratio utor.
A contented man enjoys life.	Contentus vita fruor.
Do not abuse my patience.	Meus patientia non abūtor.
Crœsus possessed great wealth.	Crœsus magnus divitiæ potior.

[1] *Abutēre* is found in the 2d person singular, future tense.
[2] Governed by *ignōtus* by rule 12th.
[3] *Makes use of*—utĭtur.

2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

RULE XXII. *Sum* used instead of *affĕro*, (which means to *bring*,) governs two datives, the one dative of a person, and the other dative of the thing; as,

Est mihi voluptāti,
it is to me for pleasure, that is, *it brings pleasure to me.*

Latin Examples.

Est honōri tibi.
Ego sum curæ tuo negotio.
Vitis arborĭbus decŏri est.
Uvæ vitĭbus decŏri sunt.
Lupus est exitio pecŏri.
Exitio nautis avĭdis est mare.
Bonus puer est honōri ejus parentĭbus.
Amīcus amīco solamĭni est.
Cibus illis adversum famem atque sitim, non lubidĭni neque luxuriæ erat.
Multis corpus est voluptāti, anĭma oněri.

English Examples.

He was an example[1] to many. — Ille multus exemplum sum.
He was of great use[2] to me. — Ille ego usus magnus sum.
He commanded them to supply corn, which would be necessary for the war. — Impĕro comporto frumentum, quod usus sum bellum.
All the cattle was the plunder of the soldiers. — Pecus omnis miles præda sum.

[1] *An example*, to be put in the dative.
[2] *Of great use*, that is, *for* great use; use the dative.

Let your brother be an example to you.	Tuus frater tu exemplum sum. (*subj. pres.*)
Knowledge will always bring both profit and pleasure to you.	Scientia tu usus atque voluptas semper sum.

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and Genitive.*

RULE XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,
he accuses me of theft.

Latin Examples.

Meipsum inertiæ condemno. Monet me officii.
Illum homicidii absolvunt. Cicĕro Vernem furti accusāvit.
Judex absolvit injuriārum eum.
Morbus debet monēre te mortis.
Senātus liberāvit regem ejus culpæ.
Athenienses Socrătem[1] impietātis male accusavērunt.
Romānus Senātus Catilīnam pessimōrum facinŏrum condemnāvit.

English Examples.

He condemns his son-in-law of wickedness.	Scelus condemno gener suus.
The death of a friend warns us of our own death.	Mors amīcus ego (*acc. plur.*) mors noster moneo.

[1] Socrates was one of the greatest philosophers in Greece. See an account of his life and death in the Classical Dictionary.

The judges condemned him of murder.	Judex is homicidium condemno.
Adversity[1] reminds men of religion.	Res adversus homo religio admoneo.
Sickness will remind you of death.	Morbus tu mors admoneo.
Accuse no one of a crime until you have heard his defence.	Nemo crimen accūso, prius quam is defensio audio.

RULE XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihĭli ;* as,

Æstĭmo te magni,[2]
I value you much.

Latin Examples.

Avārus æstĭmat pecuniam magni.
Virtūtem maxĭmi duco.
Divitiās absque doctrīnâ nihĭli puta.
Stultus divitias,[3] sapiens virtūtem maxĭmi æstĭmat
Fortūnam minĭmi, honestātem maxĭmi pende.
Epicūrus voluptātem magni æstimāvit, sed nulla possessio pluris æstimanda est quàm virtus.
Sapiens facit voluptātem minĭmi, et æstĭmat nullam possessiōnem pluris quàm virtūtem.

---

[1] *Adversity*—res adversæ, *adverse things ;* and then of course the verb should be put in the plural.

[2] There is always some substantive understood in this elliptical or short form of expression ; as, *æstĭmo te magni*, that is,

Æstĭmo te esse hominem magni pretii,
I esteem you to be a man of great price or *value.*

[3] *Æstĭmat* is understood to the first part of this sentence.

English Examples.

He valued money greatly.[1]	Divitiæ magnus æstĭmo.
Brave men value threats as nothing.	Fortis minæ nihil puto.
A wise man values reputation more than riches.	Sapiens fama plus quàm divĭtiæ æstĭmo.
A fool values money more than learning.	Stultus pecunia plus quam doctrīna facio.
A pious man esteems religion of the greatest consequence.[2]	Pius vir religio magnus æstĭmo.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative and Dative.*

RULE XXV.[3] Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homēro, Eripuit mē morti,[4]
I compare Virgil to Homer. he rescued me from death.

Latin Examples.

Suum[5] cuique tribŭito.	Narras fabŭlam surdo.[6]
Legam lectiōnem tibi.	Religio morti[4] timōrem aufert.

[1] *Greatly*, to be rendered by *magni*.

[2] *Of the greatest consequence*—maxĭmi.

[3] This rule may be better expressed in more general terms—*Any active verb may govern the accusative and dative, when both the object is expressed, and the person or thing upon which the object is exerted.*

[4] Verbs which signify to take away, have the sign *from* with the dative.

[5] Negotium, *thing*, is here understood.

[6] *Homĭni* is here understood.

Puĕro studiōso magister premium donābit.
Sæpe conferĭmus parva magnis.
Ille mihi responsum dedit.
Hannĭbal ejus militĭbus verba fecit præ Cannārum prœlium.
Vita nihil mortalĭbus donat sine magnâ opĕrâ.
Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.

English Examples.

Take from me this grief.	Eripio ego (*dat.*) hic dolor.[1]
Show me[1] your letter.	Vester epistŏla ego (*dat.*) ostendo.
Temperance brings peace to the mind.	Temperantia anĭmus pax fero.
Solon gave laws to the Athenians, Lycurgus to the Spartans, and Numa to the Romans.	Solon Athenienses, Lycurgus Lacedemonii, atque Numa Romāni lex do.
Pay me the money.	Pecunia ego solvo.
The laws of Lycurgus bring up youth to labour.	Lycurgus lex adolescens (*plur.*) labor edūco.
A covetous man acquires riches for others, not for himself.	Avārus alius, non sui divitiæ paro.

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

RULE XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscĭmus pacem te,
we beg peace of thee.

[1] *Show me*, that is, show *to* me.

Latin Examples.

Docuit me grammatĭcam.
Rogo te hoc beneficium.
Rogo te hanc veniam.
Geographiam puĕros docēmus.
Plato ejus discipŭlos philosophiam erudiit.
Columbæ accipĭtrem rogavērunt, ut eas defendĕret.[1]
Is me rogāvit meam sententiam de hâc lege.
Posce Deos animum fortem et carentem terrōre[2] mortis.
Sapiens docēbit ejus filios justitiam, frugalitātem, temperantiam, atque fortitudĭnem.

English Examples.

I instructed you in the liberal arts.
Doceo tu liberālis ars

Ask of God sound reason, health of mind, and next of body.
Deus posco bonus ratio, mens, et deinde corpus valetūdo.

All beg peace of you.
Omnis pax tu posco.

Ask pardon of thy father.
Rogo tuus pater venia.

Minerva instructed Telemachus in the laws and precepts of war.
Minerva Telemăchus erudio lex et præceptum bellum.

When will you teach me music?
Quum ego musĭca doceo?

Poverty teaches a man many things.
Multus homo paupertas doceo.

---

[1] *Ut eas defendĕret*, is here a whole sentence, put for the accusative of the thing. They asked him—what?—*ut eas defendĕret*.

[2] *Terrōre* is governed by *carentem* by rule 20th, which see.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

RULE XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onĕrat naves auro,
he loads the ships with gold.

Latin Examples.

Magno metu me liberābis. — Implēvit mĕro patĕram.
Solvīte[1] vestra corda metu. Milĭtes tegunt capĭta galeis.
Nudāvit aciem equestri auxilio.
Me ocŭlis spoliavērunt.
Natūra vestit ocŭlos membrānis tenuissĭmis.
Somnus nos omnĭbus sensĭbus orbat.

English Examples.

They load the altars with many offerings.	Ara multus donum onĕro.
He bound Gaul in chains.	Vincio catēna Gallia.
He deprived his father of life.	Is (*gen.*) pater vita privo.
Youth clothes our cheeks with bloom.	Juventus gena flos vestio.
Formerly they crowned victors with olive, and encircled their temples with laurel.	Olim corōno victor olīva, et is (*gen. plur.*) tempŏra laurus cingo.
This new philosophy deprives us of rest.	Hic novus philosophia ego quies privo.

[1] *Solvīte*, loose, discharge, free.

Sylla filled Rome with blood and slaughter.	Sylla Roma sanguis et cædes impleo.
Go out of the city, Catiline, and free the commonwealth from fear.	Egredior ex urbs, Catilīna, et libĕro respublĭca metus.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

RULE XXVIII. When a Verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case;[1] as,

By the Active Verb.	*By the Passive Verb.*
Accūsat me furti,	Accūsor furti,
he accuses me of theft.	*I am accused of theft.*
Docet me grammatĭcam,	Doceor grammatĭcam,
he teaches me grammar.	*I am taught grammar.*
Compăro Virgilium Homēro,	Virgilius comparātur Homēro,
I compare Virgil to Homer.	*Virgil is compared to Homer.*

Latin Examples.

By Rule 23. Damnātus est ambĭtus. Milo damnātus est homicidii.

Absolūtus est majestātis. Monētur ejus officii.

By Rule 24. Existimātur magni. Aurum habētur maxĭmi.

By Rule 25. Res nunciātur hostĭbus. Parva[2] conferuntur magnis. Mors recte comparātur somno.

Puella nobis eripĭtur. Cicĕro comparātur Demosthĕni.

---

[1] The *accusative* after an *active* verb, always becomes its *nominative*, when the verb is changed to the *passive* form; while the other case is retained.

[2] Negotia, understood, *small things.*

By Rule 26. { Is rogātus est ejus sententiam. Johannes docētur grammatĭcam.

By Rule 27. { Navis auro onerātur. Solvĭtur catēnis. Opprimĭtur ære aliēno.[1] Privātus est ejus vitâ.

English Examples.

He was accused of this crime, but acquitted by the votes of his judges.	Accūso hic crimen, sed judex absolvo sententiā.
Virtue is justly esteemed of the greatest value.	Virtus justè magnus (*super.*) æstĭmo.
Let not money be compared to reputation.	Divitiæ non fama compăro. (*pres. sub. pass.*)
The youth is taught Greek.	Puer Græcus litĕræ doceo.
Cethēgus, having been condemned of treason, was deprived of his life.	Cethēgus, proditio[2] condemno, is vita privo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

RULE XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expĕdit reipublĭcæ,
it is profitable for the state.

Latin Examples.

Licet nemĭni peccāre.[3] Accĭdit mihi præter[4] opinionem.

[1] *Æs* originally meant *copper*, and therefore used for *money:* hence *æs alienum*, which literally means *another man's copper*, means also *debt;* as when one man is in debt to another, he has *another man's money.*

[2] To be put in the genitive, by Rule 23d.

[3] The infinitive is governed by licet, by Rule 30th

[4] See Prepositions, page 99.

Conducit salūti vivĕre e natūrâ, et nobis expĕdit ita vivĕre.

2 3 1 6 5 4

Omnĭbus bonis expĕdit salvam esse rempublĭcam.[1]

Libet mihi expatiāri.

Non libet mihi deplorāre vitam.

Præstat philosŏphis tacēre, quàm loqui.

English Examples.

It is evident to me that God[2] governs the world.	Constat ego Deus mundus guberno.
It was manifest to all that he aimed at the sovereignty.	Omnis patet is imperium peto.
It is better to die than to live in slavery.	Præstat morior quàm in servĭtus vivo.
It appears to me that he is a bad man.	Vidētur ego is malus sum. (*inf.*)

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

RULE XXX. One Verb governs another in the Infinitive; as,

Cupio discĕre,
I desire to learn.

---

[1] *Rempublĭcam*—the accusative before the infinitive *esse*, by Rule 4.

[2] *That God*—Deum—the accusative before the infinitive of the verb.

Latin Examples.

Non possum[1] dormīre. Omnes volunt vivĕre beātè.

Urbes non possunt nec ædificāri nec frequentāri sine cætu homĭnum.

Potes dicĕre nihil verum.

3 4 2 1
Omne negotium effugĕre cupīvit.

1 4 5 6 3 2
Jam nihil de republĭcâ cogitāre statui.

1 2 5 6 4 3
Romæ[2] elephantes per funes incedĕre docebantur.

Nemo potest esse beātus sine virtūte.

Malum librum laudāre non possum.

3 4 2 1
Illecĕbras voluptātis vitāre debēmus.

1 4 5 3 6 2
Non omnes homĭnes amāre parĭter possŭmus.

English Examples.

Learn to live, and learn to die. — Disco vivo, et disco morior.

I love to study, because I wish to learn. — Amo studeo, quia volo disco

Who is able to know all things? — Qui omnis nosco possum?

---

[1] Possum is an irregular verb; (see Appendix.)

[2] Romæ, *at Rome*, the genitive of *place where*; see Rule 47th.

Do you love to walk?	Amo tu ambŭlo?
Good men hate to sin.	Bonus odi pecco.
Learn to bear well a great fortune.	Disco bene fero magnus fortūna.
Thespis is said to have invented Tragedy.	Thespis dico Tragœdia invenio.
Nothing can imitate the skill of nature.	Nihil possum natūra solertia imĭtor.
Remember to preserve an equal mind[1] in difficult circumstances.	Memĭni in res adversus æquanimĭtas conservo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Rule XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs;[2] as,

Amans virtūtem,
loving virtue.

Latin Examples

3 5 4 2 1
Regni rerumque oblīti sunt.

Legāti venērunt questum[3] injurias, et ex fœdĕre res[4] petītum.

Nauta, tenens gubernacŭlum, navim regit.

---

[1] *An equal mind*, to be rendered by the accusative of *æquanimĭtas*, equanimity.

[2] That is, if the verb govern the *accusative*, the participle, gerund, or supine derived from it, governs the *accusative*; if the verb govern the *dative*, the participle governs the *dative*; and so on.

[3] *Questum* comes from *queror*.

[4] *Res*, here means *property*; for the meaning of *ex* see page 100, second definition.

Mors est anteponenda[1] dedecŏri.

Julius Cæsar functus[2] consulātu, Galliam provinciam sorte obtinuit.

Ille carens[3] fraude, ab omnĭbus amātus est.

Consilium Lacedæmŏnem occupandi cepērunt.

Antonius vestem Cæsăris sanguinolentam ostentans, popŭlum adversus conjurātos inflammāvit.

English Examples.

Stretching both his hands towards heaven.	Tendo duplex manus ad cœlum.
We sent to inquire[4] of his health.	Mitto quæro is valetūdo (*acc.*)
An army pursuing the enemy, fights with darts.	Exercĭtus hostis sequor, cum sagitta pugno.
Admonishing me of my duty, he departed.	Ego officium admoneo, abeo.
Loaded with chains he was cast into prison.	Catēna onĕro, (*perf. part.*) in carcer jacto.
By using deceit he was despised.	Fraus utor, (*ger. abl.*) contemno.
Nor have I any hope of seeing my ancient country, nor my pleasing children, and my much beloved sire.	Non ego (*dat.*) ullus spes video (*ger. gen.*) patria antīquus, nec dulcis natus, ex optatusque parens.

[1] See Rules 25 and 28.

[2] See Rule 21st. [3] See Rule 20th.

[4] Let *to inquire* be translated by the supine.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

RULE XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi,
studying is to me; or, *I must study.*
Tempus studendi, Aptus studendo,
time of study. fit for studying.

Observation First. The Gerund in ***DUM***, of the nominative case, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.[1]

Latin Examples.

Etiam post malam messem serendum est.
Omnĭbus moriendum est.
Semper nobis pugnandum est contra cupiditātes.
Nobis orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano.
Vivendum est mihi rectè.
3 1 2 4 7 8 6 5
Iis vigilandum est, qui gubernacŭlum patriæ sibi deposcunt.
Videndum est igĭtur, ut eâ liberalitāte utāmur, quæ prosit amīcis, et noceat nemĭni.

English Examples.

I must govern my tongue.	Lingua (*dat.*) moděror sum ego. (*dat.*)
We must deliberate.	Ego (*dat. plur.*) delibĕro sum.
We must take care also lest the punishment be greater than the crime.	Caveo sum etiam, ne pœna magnus quàm culpa sum. (*sub. pr.*)

[1] This gerund always implies *obligation* or *necessity*, and very often the dative is understood; as, serendum est, *it must be sowed*, that is, nobis *by us*, or, omnĭbus, *by all.*

We should take ear . that the appetites be obedient to reason.	Effĭcio sum, ut appetītus ratio[1] obedio.

Observation Second. The gerund in *DI*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives.

Latin Examples.

4 3 1 2
Plurĭmæ sunt illecĕbræ peccandi.
Artem scribendi Phœnĭces invenērunt.
Artem acu pingendi[2] Phryges invenērunt.
Honestissĭma est contentio beneficiis beneficia vincendi.
Cæsar equitandi[3] peritissĭmus erat.

English Examples.

The lust of power.	Domĭno cupīdo.
We should check[4] that license of scandalizing.	Refūto iste maledico licentia.
Milo had no power of staying.	Milo (*dat.*) manco nullus sum facultas.

Observation Third. The gerund in *DO*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

Latin Examples.

Charta est utĭlis scribendo.
Hic exercĭtus aptus est gerendo bellum.
Cæsar imperat omnes naves aptas pugnando colligi.

---

[1] See Rule 17, Obs. 5th.

[2] Pingendi acu, *of painting with the needle*, that is, *of working figures upon cloth.*

[3] For the government of *equitandi* by *peritissimus*, see Rule 10th.

[4] We should check, *refutarēmus.*

English Examples.

Seed is useful for sowing.	Semen utĭlis sum sĕre.
He is not fit for commanding the army.	Ille non sum aptus exercĭtus (*dat.*) impĕro.
This water is not fit for drinking.	Hic aqua non sum aptus bĭbo.

Observation Fourth. The gerund in *DUM*, of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*.

Latin Examples.

Promptus ad audiendum. Attentus inter docendum.

2 3 4 1 7 8 6
Catōnis erga fratrem benevolentia ad imitandum propo-
5
nenda est.

Tempus anni ad gerendum bellum defĭcit.

Cæsar arbitrātus tempus esse aliēnum ad committendum prœlium, continŭit se suó loco.

English Examples.

He is artful in persuading.	Ille astūtus ad persuadeo.
The short time of our existence is long enough to live well.	Brevis tempus ætas satis sum longus ad benè vivo.

Observation Fifth. The gerund in *DO*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; or if there be no preposition, it is governed as the ablative of *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*. See Rule 46.

Latin Examples.

Pœna a peccando absterret. Defessus sum ambulando.

1 4 2 5 3

Simiæ catŭlos sæpe complectendo necant.

Amīcus semper amīcum juvābit consolando.

Plurĭmi, in suadendo, audāces; sed in ipso periculo timĭdi sunt.

English Examples.

Idle persons are soon discouraged from learning.	Ignāvus a disco cito deterreo.
It is not my design to spend my life in cultivating land or in hunting.	Non meus consilium sum ago vita ager colo aut venor.
The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking.	Homo mens disco alo et cogĭto.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

RULE XXXVI.[1] Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.	*By the Participle.*
1 3 4 2	
Petendum est mihi pacem,	Pax est petenda mihi,
seeking is to me peace.	*peace is to be sought by me.*
Tempus petendi pacem,	Tempus pacis petendæ,
time of seeking peace.	*time of peace to be sought.*

[1] This rule is numbered 36, to correspond to the number in Adam's Grammar.

Latin Examples.

Cæsar morātur in his locis causâ[1] parandārum navium.

Non habēbat facultātem[2] gerendi belli.

Omnes civitātes pecuniam dededērunt ad classes ædificandas, exercitusque comparandos.

Imperātor existimābat octoginta naves esse satis ad transportandas duas legiōnes.

1 3 4 6 7 5 8
Barbări suis,[3] quanta prædæ faciendæ facultas[4] darētur,
9 11 12 10 2
si Romānos castris expulissent demonstravērunt.

English Examples.

You, now, soldiers, have an opportunity of trying your courage.[5]	Nunc, miles, opportunĭtas habeo virtus probo.
There was a design of destroying the city, and of murdering the citizens.	Consilium sum urbs deleo, et civis interficio.
That boy is fit for sustaining labour.	Hic puer aptus sum labor tolĕro.
All the cities of Greece gave money for building[6] a fleet.	Omnis civĭtas Græcia do pecunia ad classis ædifĭco.

---

[1] *Causâ* is put in the ablative, by Rule 49th, which see.

[2] *Facultātem* here signifies *the means, the resources.*

[3] *Suis* agrees with *hominĭbus* understood.

[4] *Facultas*, here means *opportunity.*

[5] *Of trying your courage*, to be rendered by the genitive of *probanda virtus.*

[6] *For building*, ad ædificandam.

Some men use more care in procuring horses than in choosing their friends.	Quidam magnus studium utor in equus paro, quam in amīcus selīgo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in* um.

RULE XXXVII. The Supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum,
he hath gone to walk.

Latin Examples.

Venīmus huc quæsītum oracŭla.
3 4 2 1
Me ultro accusātum advēnit.
Scitātum oraculă Phœbi mittĭmus.
Imperātor duxit cohortes prædātum.
Legātos ad Cæsărem mittunt, rogātum auxĭlium.
Nunc venis irrīsum domĭtum?
Venit orātum opem.
Vos ultum injurias hortor.

English Examples.

He went to fish.	Abeo piscor.
He came to ask pardon of Cæsar.[1]	Venio oro venia Cæsar.
The army was sent to lay waste the Roman territory.	Exercĭtus mitto Romānus ager vasto.

[1] *Of Cæsar*, should be rendered by the accusative, according to Rule 26th.

They came to my house to salute me. — Venio ad meus domus ego salūto.

They go to destroy all good men. — Omnis bonus perdo eo.

2. *The Supine in* u.

RULE XXXVIII. The Supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facĭle dictu,
easy to tell, or *to be told*.

Latin Examples.

Prodigium est mirabĭle visu.

Ista[1] lepĭda sunt memorātu.

Horātius ferè solus lectu dignus.[2]

1 3 2 4 6 7 5 8 9
Nihil[3] dictu fœdum, visūque, hæc limĭna tangat, intra quæ
10 11
est puer.

4 5 3 6 1 2
Difficĭlis res est inventu verus amīcus.

Sed incredibĭle dictu est, quantum civĭtas brevi crevit.

English Examples.

The thing is horrible to relate. — Res horrendus refĕro.

It is wonderful to tell how much he accomplished by diligence. — Mirabĭlis sum dico quantum diligentia (*abl.*) facio.

---

[1] *Ista*, 'those things.'

[2] *Est* is to be supplied.

[3] *Nihil* is the nominative to *tangat*, which is in the subjunctive mode, present tense, and is used here, as is often the case, for the imperative mode; as, puer legat, *let the boy read*, for, puer legĭto: before in construing *nihil*, say, *let nothing*.

It is easy to tell that idleness[1] will produce misery.	Facĭlis dico ignavia miseria gigno.
It is difficult to find a true friend.	Difficĭlis sum invenio amīcus verus.
This is lawful to be spoken.	Hic fas sum dico.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

RULE XXXIX. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Benè scribit,	Fortĭter pugnans,
well he writes.	*bravely fighting.*

Latin Examples.

1 3 2 7 6 5 4
Xantippe, Socrătis uxor, morōsa admŏdùm fuisse fertur.
Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto[2] latent.
4 7 8 6 1 5 2
Diutiùs nostrōrum milĭtum impĕtum hostes ferre non potuērunt, ac terga vertērunt.
3 9, 11 10
Natio omnis Gallōrum admŏdùm dedĭta est religionĭbus.
Biduo post, Ariovistus legātos ad Cæsărem mittit.

English Examples.

Cimon quickly came to the greatest eminence.	Cimon celerĭter ad principātus pervenio.
He died a few days after.	Ille pauci post dies (*abl. plur.*) morior.
I hoped well, but it happened much otherwise.	Spero bene, sed evĕnit multo alĭter.

[1] *That idleness;* accusative before the future infinitive.

[2] *Occulto* is here used for a noun, *in secret;* properly speaking, it agrees with *loco* understood; in occulto loco, *in a secret place.*

IV. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

Rule XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè	ejus diēi,	Ubĭque gentium,
the day before that day.		*in every part of nations,* or *every where.*

Latin Examples.

Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus est.
Te interea loci[1] cognōvi.
Ejus abstinentiæ hoc erit satis testimonii.
Contentio eò[2] vecordiæ processit, ut studiis civilĭbus finem facĕret.
Credo inesse in arcâ largĭter auri et argenti.
Postridie ejus diei mane, milĭtes in expeditiōnem misit.

English Examples.

He came to such a pitch[2] of insolence, that I commanded him to leave me.	Venio eò arrogantia, (*gen.*) ut is (*dat.*) impĕro ego desĕro.
A great abundance[3] of wealth is not necessary for us.	Affătim divitiæ non ego opus sum.
We have said words enough,[4] (enough of words.)	Dico satis verbum.
He has enough talk, but little wisdom.	Habeo satis loquentia, sed parum sapientia.
He had eloquence enough.	Habeo satis eloquentia.

[1] Interea loci, *in the mean time.*
[2] To such a pitch, *eò.*
[3] A great abundance, *affătim.*
[4] Enough, *satis.*

Rule XLI. Some derivative Adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

3 2 1
Omnium optĭmè loquĭtur,
of all best he speaks, or,
he speaks best of all.

Latin Examples.

Ille nātūræ convenienter[1] vivit.

Jugurtha sæpe eundo obviam periculis, in tantam claritudinem brevi perveněrat, ut Romānis vehěmenter cārus, Numantīnis[2] maxĭmo terrōri[2] esset.

Proxĭmè urbi Spartæ Eurōtas fluvius delabĭtur.

Cicĕro optĭmè[3] omnĭum Romanōrum locūtus est.

Castra nostra propĭùs urbi movebantur.

English Examples.

Miltiades flourished the greatest of all.	Miltiădes omnis maxĭmè floreo.
He staid beyond[4] expectation.	Maneo diutiùs[4] expectatio.
What does he say agreeably to reason?	Quid ratio convenienter dico?
Part of the standards were burnt.	Partim signum (*gen. plur.*) uro.
I sent to Athens to meet[5] him.	Mitto Athenæ (*acc.*) obviam is. (*dat.*)

---

[1] *Convenienter*; and *obviam*, in the next sentence; *proxĭmè*, in the next, and *propius*, in the next but one; all govern the dative by the force of their primitives, under Rule 12th; which see.

[2] For the government of these two datives see Rule 22d.

[3] For the primitive of *optĭmè* see Rule 11th.

[4] *Diutiùs* governs the ablative by Rule 61.

[5] To meet, *obviam*.

All, in the mean time, run to meet me. — Omnis, interea locus, ego obviam concurro.

2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS

1. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

RULE XLII. There are thirty-two prepositions which govern the accusative, or have an accusative after them.

[For examples under this rule see pages 98 and 99.]

2. *Prepositions governing the Ablative.*

RULE XLIII. There are thirteen prepositions which govern the ablative, or have an ablative case after them.

[For examples under this rule see page 100.]

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative and Ablative.*

RULE XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative. [See page 101.]

RULE XLV. A Preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholam,
let us go to school.

Latin Examples.

Urbem[1] magnam accedĭmus.
Boni puĕri scholam adīre delectant, et scholâ composĭtè exeunt.
Mali puĕri scholâ expelluntor.
Catilīna, Cicerōne accusātus, urbe evāsit.
Igĭtur Metellus cuncta mœnia[2] exercĭtu circumvēnit.
Alĭqui vitam silentio transeunt, velŭti pecŏra.
At Jugurtha, magnis itinerĭbus, Metellum antevēnit.

English Examples.

They thrust the ships from the rocks.	Detrūdo navis scopŭlus.
Cæsar led[3] all his cavalry over the bridge.	Cæsar omnis equitātus pons tradūco.
I am absent both from my house and the forum.	Absum et meus domus et forum.
He addressed me in these words.	Hic verbum (*abl. plur.*) ego allŏquor.

[1] *Urbem* is governed by *ad* in the composition of *accedĭmus*. See note 3, page 129.

[2] This 42d Rule generally takes place when the preposition can be separated from its verb. So in this line—venit exercĭtu circum cuncta mœnia; where *circum* is separated from *venit*.

[3] In English the preposition is generally separated from its verb, and put after it. In this sentence, to follow the Latin manner of speaking, it would be, *Cæsar over led the bridge all his cavalry*.

The fleet is drawn around[1] the citadel.	Classis arx circumvĕho.
Being expelled from his country he went to Sicily.	Patria expulsus Sicilia (*acc.*) eo.
By this way he drew over his troops, and came into Italy.	Hic[2] copia tradūco, et in Italia (*acc.*) pervenio.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

RULE XLVI. The Interjections, *O, heu,* and *proh,* are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

1 3 2
O vir bonus!

O good man!

Latin Examples.

O me perdĭtum! O faciem pulchram!
O meam calamitōsam senectūtem!
Heu me misĕrum! quum tuum anĭmum spectāvi
1 3 4 5 2
Proh deûm[3] atque homĭnum fidem!
Heu, miserande puer!

English Examples.

What an abandoned and impudent man!	O! scelestus atque audax homo! (*acc.*)
O my country! O Ilium!	O patria! (*voc.*) O Ilium!
O the detestable meanness of the man!	O fœdĭtas (*acc.*) homo flagitiōsus!
O sacred Jove! what greater action was ever performed?	Prô sanctus Jupĭter! (*voc.*) quis magnus res unquam gero?

[1] Is drawn around, *circumvehĭtur.*

[2] Put this in the *abl. sing. fem.* to agree with *via* understood.

[3] Deûm, contracted for deōrum.

RULE XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi!	Væ vobis!
ah me!	*woe to you!*

Latin Examples.

Hei mihi! non possum hoc sine lacrȳmis commemorāre.
Hei mihi, qualis erat![1] quantùm mutātus ab illo Hectŏre, qui rediit exuvias[2] indūtus Achillis!
Væ misĕro mihi!

English Examples.

Alas! whither am I hurried? Hei ego! quò rapio?
Woe to me! my son has fallen in battle. Væ ego! meus filius in pugna occumbo.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

Q. How many circumstances are there in Latin, expressed in different cases?

A. Five: 1. The *Price of a thing.* 2. The *Cause, Manner,* and *Instrument.* 3. *Place.* 4. *Measure* and *Distance.* 5. *Time.*

1. PRICE.

RULE XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duōbus assĭbus,
I bought a book for two shillings.

---

[1] Qualis erat! *what was he!* that is, *how he looked!* This refers to Hector, the Trojan general, who was killed by Achilles, and whose body was dragged around the walls of Troy.

[2] *Exuvias* is governed by the preposition *secundum* understood. It refers to the armour of Achilles which Patroclus, another Grecian general, had worn, whom Hector had killed, and in whose armour he had dressed himself, before he himself was killed by Achilles.

Latin Examples.

Isocrătes orātor unam oratiōnem viginti talentis vendĭdit.
Locāvit suam domum centum aureis.
Multŏrum sanguĭne ac vulnerĭbus ea Pœnis victoria stetit.[1]
Magno pretio ubique virtus æstimātur.
Emi librum duōbus assĭbus.
Voluptas empta dolōre nocet.
Plurĭmi auro veneunt honōres.

English Examples.

This man sold his country for gold.	Hic aurum patria vendo.
Demosthenes taught for a talent.	Demosthĕnes talentum doceo.
What is not necessary, is dear at a penny.	Quis non sum necessarius, carus sum denarius.
He sold his house for a large sum of money.	Vendo is domus grandis pecunia.
Life is not to be bought at every price.	Vita non sum emo[2] omnis pretium.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

RULE XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	Fecit suo more,
I am pale for fear.	*he did it in his own way.*

[1] Stetit Pœnis, literally, *stood to the Carthagenians;* as we say of any thing, *it stands us in* so much, when it *costs us* so much: therefore construe it 'costs the Carthagenians.' *Multōrum* agrees with *hominum* or *militum* understood.

[2] Use the future pass. part. fem.

Latin Examples.

Percussit eum gladio.

Neptūnus tridente suo terram percussit.

Eurōpa ab Afrĭca sejungĭtur freto Gaditāno.

1 4 3 2 6 5

Plato, discendi cupiditāte ductus, Ægyptum[1] peragrāvit.

Feræ domantur fame atque verberĭbus.

Crocodīlus pelle durissĭma contra omnes ictus munītur.

Elephanti spirant, bibunt, odorantur proboscĭde.

Dentes usu atteruntur, sed igne non cremantur.

Multi morbi curantur abstinentiâ et quiēte.

Deus colĭtur non corporĭbus opīmis taurōrum contrucidātis, non auro, non argento, sed voluntāte piâ et rectâ.

Laborĭbus, consiliis, periculisque Cicerōnis, Roma conservāta est.

English Examples.

Let us always worship God with a pure mind.	Semper Deus colo (*pres. sub.*), purus anĭmus.
The world was created by God.	Mundus Deus creo.
Demosthenes overcame the impediments of nature by industry and diligence.	Demosthĕnes natūra impedĭmentum vinco, industria atque diligentia.
The sun shines by his own light; the moon and the planets shine by the light of the sun.	Sol suus lux luceo; luna et planēta sol lumen luceo.
Rome was founded by Romulus.	Roma Romŭlus fundo.

[1] For the government of Ægyptum see Rule 51st.

The manners of men are changed by adversity as well as by prosperity.	Mos homo adversĭtas æquè ac prosperĭtas muto.
We are all drawn by a desire of praise.	Nos omnis traho laus[1] studium.
Pompey was conquered by Cæsar.	Pompeius Cæsar vinco.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

1. *The place* WHERE.

RULE L. When the place *where*, or *in which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,
he lived at Rome.

Latin Examples.

Quid Romæ faciam?
Templum Diānæ fuit Ephĕsi.
Marcus Antonius primus Romæ leōnes ad currum junxit.

[1] *Laus*, to be put in the genitive.

Pompeius Thessaliæ a Cæsăre fugātus est.
1 4 6 3 5 2
Cato sibi Utĭcæ mortem ferro conscīvit.
Antonius Actii victus est ab Augusto navāli pugnâ cl[illegible] illustri.
Sappho Lesbi natus est.
Ægypti multa mira sunt et artis et natūræ opĕra: inter ea quæ manĭbus hominum facta sunt, pyramĭdes.[1]

English Examples.

Cicero was born at Arpinum.	Cicero Arpīnum nascor.
Dionysius taught children at Corinth.	Dionysius Corinthus lĭbĕri doceo.
At Sparta old age was most honoured.	Sparta senectus sum honorātus. (*super.*)
At Rome were exhibited the most barbarous sports.	Ludus truculentus Roma ostendo.
Hannibal conquered the Roman army at Cannæ.	Hannĭbal Cannæ exercĭtus Romānus vinco.
There is a temple of Neptune at Tænărus, which the Greek accounts a most heinous crime to pollute.	Fanum Neptūnus sum Tænărus, qui viŏlo nefas puto Græcus.

2. *The place* WHITHER.

RULE LI. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,
he came to Rome.

[1] *Sunt* understood.

Latin Examples.

Deindè Cæsar Pharsālum petiit, ubi Pompeium Pharsalĭco prælio fudit.

Misērunt Delphos consultum quid facĕrent de rebus suis.

Pompeius victus Pharsaliæ, Alexandrīam contendit.

Quum Scipio a Cæsăre victus est, Cato Utĭcam Afrĭcæ urbem petīvit.

Cicĕro Athēnas petīvit, ut Antiŏchum philosŏphum audīret: indè, eloquentiæ gratiâ, Rhodum se contŭlit, ubi Molōne,[1] rhetŏre tum disertissĭmo, magistro usus est.

Alcibiădes clam se a custodĭbus subduxit, et inde primum Elĭdem, deinde Thebas venit.

English Examples.

Regulus returned to Carthage.	Regŭlus Carthāgo redeo.
If I dared, I would go to Athens.	Si audeo Athēnæ peto.
I wish to go to Alexandria.	Volo Alexandrīa eo.
After the battle of Cannæ Hannibal went to Capua.	Post Cannæ pugna, Hannĭbal Capua contendo.
He led his army to Megăra, and immediately after to Corinth.	Is exercĭtus duco Megăra, et postquam Corinthus.
When Themistocles saw that he was not safe enough at Argos, he removed to Corcyra.	Themistŏcles, ubi video sui (*acc.*) non satis tutus sum Argos, Corcўra demĭgro.

[1] Governed by *usus est*: see Rule 21st.

3. *The place* WHENCE.

RULE LII. When the place *whence, or from which,* or the place *by* or *through which,* is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,
he departed from Corinth.

Latin Examples.

Pompeius, Syriâ[1] decēdens, quum Rhodum venisset, nobilissĭmum philosŏphum Posidonium cupiit audīre.

Ænēas Trojâ aufūgit et in Ĭtaliam venit.

Cæsar, Galliâ[1] remeans, contra senātûs consultum, Romam cum exercĭtu petiit.

Cyrus ejus exercĭtum Sarde Babylōnem duxit: Cunaxæ victus et occīsus est.

English Examples.

Themistocles was banished from Athens.	Themistŏcles Athēnæ expello.
Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.	Dionysius Plato Athēnæ arcesso.
Clodius suddenly departed from Rome, that he might prepare an ambush for Milo.	Clodius subĭto Roma discēdo, ut insidiæ Milo paro.
I received many letters from Rome.	Multus epistŏla Roma accipio.

[1] The preposition, though generally added to names of countries, is sometimes omitted.

Domus and *Rus*.

RULE LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	Rediit rure,
he stays at home.	*he is returned from the country.*

Latin Examples.

At nobis est domi[1] inopia; foris æs aliēnum.

Nunc verō est exsul domo,[2] atque omnium honestārum rerum[3] egens.

Allobrŏges, priusquam domum[4] pergĕrent, cum Catilīnâ societātem confirmavērunt.

Domi industria, foris justum imperium fuit.

English Examples.

I will not go from my father's house.	Non eo domus paternus.
A messenger came to him from home.	Nuntius ad is domus venio.
I fear lest my father should return from the country.	Timeo ne meus pater rus redeo.
He came to the house of Pompey early in the morning.	Venio Pompeius domus primus lux. (*abl.*[5])
He has gone to the country to pass the rest of his life.	Rus proficiscor reliquus vita ago.

[1] In the genitive, by Rule 50. Repeat this Rule first, then the 50th.

[2] In the ablative, by Rule 52.

[3] Governed by *egens*, by Rule 14.

[4] In the accusative, by Rule 51.

[5] See Rule 56.

Good manners prevailed at that time, at home.	Bonus mos tunc tempus (*gen.*[1]) domus valeo.

RULE LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

Natus est in Italiâ,	Rediit ex Italiâ,
he was born in Italy.	*he returned from Italy.*

Latin Examples.

Transiit per Italiam.
Ab Eurōpâ petis Asiam; ex Asiâ transis in Eurōpam.
Iter in Ciliciam faciam per Cappadociam.
Ex Ephĕso huc ad meum sodālem litĕras misi.
Solon, postquam leges Atheniensĭbus dedit, in Asiam Ægyptumque peregrinātus est: deinde Athēnas rediit.

English Examples.

Cæsar marched to farther Gaul.	Cæsar in Gallia ulterior contendo.
I rejoice that you did not go into Britain.	Gaudeo tu (*acc.*) non in Britania proficiscor.
Hannibal, having marched through Italy, returned to Carthage.	Hannĭbal quum per Italia incēdo, Carthāgo redeo.
Hannibal sent one army into Spain, and left another in Africa.	Hannĭbal unus exercĭtus in Hispaniæ in Afrĭca relinquo

[1] See Rule 40.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

RULE LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
the wall is ten feet high.

Latin Examples.

Abest Italia ab Sardiniâ centum viginti millia passuum.[1]
Locus est ab urbe decem millia passuum.
Jam mille passus processĕram.
Babylōnis muri fuērunt ducentos cubĭtos[2] alti.
Lavinium distat ab Româ itinĕre unīus diēi.[3]
Muri Athēnārum ad Piraeum porrecti sunt tria millia passuum in longitudĭne.

English Examples.

I will not go a foot from you.	Non discēdo pes a tu.
The Persian gulf is distant from the Red sea one hundred and fifty miles.	Persĭcus sinus mare Rubr absum centum et quinquaginta mille passus. (*abl.*)
He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy.	Pono castra sex mille passus ab hostis. (*plur.*)
Hannibal was three days journey from Tarentum.	Hannĭbal a Tarentum tres dies (*gen.*) iter. (*acc.*)

[1] Governed by *millia*, by Rule 11th. A thousand paces made one mile: ten thousand paces were therefore ten miles.

[2] A cubit was a foot and an half long.

[3] The ancients often reckoned distances by days' journeys.

5. TIME.

RULE LVI. Time *when* is put in the *ablative;* time *how long* is put in the *accusative* or *ablative;* as,

Venit tertiâ horâ,
he came at the third hour.

Mansit paucos dies, Abfuit sex mensĭbus,
he stayed a few days. he was away six months.

Latin Examples.

Antiquissĭmis temporĭbus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicĭtur.

Postĕro die, procul a castris, hostes in collĭbus constitērunt.

Hiĕme ursi in antris dormiunt.

Nemo mortalium omnĭbus horis sapit.

Anno decĭmo quarto postquam in Italiam Hannĭbal venĕrat, Scipio consul creātus[1] et in Afrĭcam missus est.

Eōdem die legāti ab hostĭbus missi ad Cæsărem de pace venērunt.

Nostri milĭtes horas quatuor fortissĭme pugnavērunt.

Eōdem die ab exploratorĭbus Cæsar certior factus est hostes sub montem consedisse, millia passuum ab ipsĭus castris octo.

English Examples.

He came at three o'clock.	Venio tertius hora.
Hippocrates, a most celebrated physician, lived ninety-nine years.	Hippocrătes, medĭcus celĕber, vivo annus undecentum.
The sun shone out on the third day.	Tertius dies sol luceo.

[1] *Est* is here understood.

He had a house for many years at Rome.	Multus annus is (*dat.*) domus sum Roma.
Rome was built in the seven hundred and fifty-third year before Christ.	Roma condo septingentesĭmus et quinquagesĭmus tertius annus ante Christus.
On the next day they removed the camp from that place.	Postĕrus dies castra ex is locus moveo.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Q. What is a *Compound Sentence?*

A. A *Compound Sentence* is that which is made up of two or more simple sentences, and which has more than one nominative, and one verb.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

RULE LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod,* agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Vir qui,	Fœmĭna quæ,	Negotium quod,
the man who.	*the woman who.*	*the thing which.*

Observation First. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

Latin Examples.

6 5 7 8 1 2 4 3
Minor est quàm servus domĭnus, qui servos timet.
Non omnis ager, qui serĭtur, fert fruges.

Beneficium reddit[1] qui ejus[2] bene memor est.
Amo virum qui pauca loquĭtur.
Ego sum Miltiădes, qui Persas vici.
Deus, qui noscit corda et cogitatiōnes, puniet scelestos qui ejus præcepta viŏlant, et remunerābit bonos.
Cato, qui fuit sapiens, amāvit patriam.
Illa habet modestiam, quæ est ornātus vitæ.
Omnes Romāni senātorẹs convenient, qui promisērunt.

English Examples.

God who gives life.	Deus qui do vita.
We love the man who loves God.	Amo vir qui Deus amo.
Men, who neglect religion, will be punished hereafter.	Ille (*nom. plur.*) qui religio neglĭgo, olim punio.
There is a God in the world, who governs all things.	Deus sum in mundus, qui omnis guberno.
He is braver who conquers himself, than he who conquers the strongest city.	Ille qui sui vinco fortis sum quàm qui urbs munītus expugno.
There are four parts of the world, which are, Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.	Sum mundus quàtuor pars, qui sum Eurōpa, Asia, Afrĭca, et Amerĭca.
The hour which is past cannot return.	Hora qui prætereo (*perf.*) non redeo possum.

Observation Second. But when a nominative does come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be in that case, which the verb, or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

---

[1] *Ille* is understood, to which *qui* relates.

[2] For the government of *ejus* by *memor*, see Rule 10th.

Latin Examples.

Est Deus quem colĭmus, cui nullus est simĭlis, cujus[1] munĕre vivĭmus, a quo facta sunt omnia.

Urbs, quam Romŭlus condĭdit, Roma vocāta est.

Est bonus puer quem gloria excĭtat, et laus delectat.

Sulla mox Romam ingressus est, quam cæde[2] et sanguĭne civium replēvit.

Cæsar his de causis, quas commemorāvi, Rhenum transīre decrēvit.

Avaritia pecuniæ studium habet, quam nemo sapiens concupīvit.

Felices sunt, quorum[3] corda pura sunt.

Legati ab iis venērunt, quorum oratio grata fuit.

Est Deus, cujus[4] numen adorarēmus, cui[5] parerēmus, et a quo conservamur.

Commŏda, quibus utĭmur, lux quâ fruĭmur, spirĭtus quem ducĭmus, dantur et impertiuntur nobis a Deo.

English Examples.

The mountains which we see.	Mons qui video.
The breath which we draw, comes from Heaven.	Spirĭtus, qui duco, a Deus venio.
The city, which Romulus built, was called Rome.	Urbs qui Romŭlus condo, voco Roma.

---

[1] Cujus, *of whom*, to be rendered *whose*; as, cujus munĕre, *by whose bounty*.

[2] See Rule 27th.

[3] Quorum, *of whom*, to be rendered *whose*: Thus, quorum corda, *whose hearts*. *Wherein*, is equivalent to *in which*; *whereby*, *by which*; *whereof*, to *of which*; *wherewith*, to *with which*, &c.

[4] Governed by *nu*[illegible]*n*, by Rule 6th.

[5] See Rule 17th, C[illegible]*rvation* 5th.

Some men hate those things which others love.	Alĭquis odi is (*acc. plur neut.*) qui alius amo.
The God whom we adore is the best and the greatest.	Deus, qui colo, bonus et magnus sum.
I see Italy, which your ancestors conquered.	Italĭa, qui majōres vester vinco, video.
The arrows which they send forth are deadly.	Sagitta, qui emitto, lethālis sum.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE LVIII. The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem,
honour father and mother.

Latin Examples.

Gallia posĭta est inter Pyrenæos montes et Rhenum:

Erant in Pompeio multæ ac magnæ virtūtes, ac præcipuè admiranda frugalĭtas.

Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquĭmus arva.

Accipĕre præstat quàm facĕre injuriam.

Sapiens est, qui sibi imperiōsus; quem neque paupertas, neque mors, neque vincŭla terrent.

Non census, nec clarum nomen avōrum, sed virtus magnos[1] facit.

Germāni vetĕres non habuērunt urbes mœnĭbus cinctas, aut fossis aggerĭbusque munītas.

---

[1] *Magnos* agrees with *viros* understood.

English Examples.

The winds subside, and the clouds disperse.	Concĭdo ventus, fugioque nubes.
Length of time consumes iron and stone.	Vetustas ferrum et lapis (*plur.*) exĕdo.
Virtue is esteemed illustrious and immortal.	Virtus æstĭmo clarus et immortālis.
Neither wealth, nor power, nor pleasures, render a man happy.	Nec divitiæ, nec potestas, nec voluptas, aliquis beātus facio.
I did not blame your cause, but your plan.	Non res sed consilium reprehendo.
He reached land at daybreak, and brought over all the ships safe.	Primus lux[1] terra attingo, omnisque incolumis navis perduco.

RULE LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et, ac, atque,* &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,
Peter and John who are learned.

Latin Examples.

Fames et sitis sunt molestæ.
Demosthĕnes et Cicĕro oratōres præstantissĭmi fuērunt.
Rhenus Rhodanusque Eurōpæ amnes sunt maxĭmi.
Græcĭæ civitātes clarissĭmæ fuērunt Athēnæ atque Lacedæmon.
3 2 1 4 5 6 7

[1] Ablative by Rule 56th, which see.

Lupus et agnus, siti[1] compulsi, ad rivum eundem venĕrunt.
Clarissĭmi amnes Italiæ sunt Padus et Tiběris.
Menelāüs et Paris armāti pugnavērunt propter Helĕnam et divitias.

English Examples.

The master and the scholar study.	Magister et discipŭlus studeo.
Homer and Milton were blind.	Homērus et Milton cœcus sum.
Alexander and Julius Cæsar were very great commanders.	Alexander et Julius Cæsar sum præstans (*super.*) dux.
The husband and the wife agree.	Marītus et uxor consentio.
My father and my mother are pious.	Meus pater et mater sum pius.
Riches, power, and honour, are uncertain.	Divitiæ, potestas, et honor sum incertus.
Habit and reason have made you more patient and gentle.	Mos et ratio tu patiens et placĭdus facio.

RULE LX. The conjunctions, *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utĭnam*, and *dummŏdo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,	Utĭnam sapĕres,
I read that I may learn.	*O that you were wise.*

Latin Examples.

Tanta est in Indiâ ubertas soli, ut sub unâ ficu turmæ equĭtum condantur.

[1] Siti abl. Nouns which have im or in in the accusative, have i in the ablative.

Orandum est[1] ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano.

Hic locus est unus, quò perfugiant.

1 2 3 5 8 7 6 4
Dicam equĭdem, licet arma mihi mortemque minētur.

1 3 4 2
Utĭnam illum diem videam.

Ingens fuit Romæ timor, ne itĕrum Galli urbem occupārent.

Omnia honesta neglĭgunt, dummŏdo potentiam consequantur.

Quamŏbrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legātos mittĕret, qui ab eo postulārent, ut alĭquem locum medium utrisque colloquio deligĕret.

English Examples.

God sent his Son into the world, that the world through him might be saved.	Deus is Filium in mundus mitto, ut mundus per is servo.
I will detect the thief, though he threaten arms and death.	Detĕgo furtum, licet arma et mors minor.
I wish[2] you were wise.	Utĭnam tu sapio.
Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty.	Amo non somnus, ne pauper sum.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

RULE LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by* than;[3]) as,

Dulcior melle,	Præstantior auro,
sweeter than honey.	*better than gold.*

[1] *Nobis* is understood by Rule 32. [2] I wish—*utinam.*

[3] That is, when quàm, *than*, is omitted after a comparative the substantive following is put in the ablative

Latin Examples.

Pax optabilior est bello. Cicĕro fuit honestior Cæsăre.
Nihil est clementiâ divinius. Aurum gravius est argento.
Luna terræ propior est sole. Virtus opĭbus melior.
Adămas durior est ferro, ferrum durius cætĕris metallis.
Inter urbes Siciliæ nulla fuit illustrior Syracūsis.
Greciâ enim nulla regio magnōrum ingeniōrum[1] fuit feracior.

English Examples.

Solon was wiser than Crœsus. Solon sapiens sum Crœsus.
Ice is colder than marble. Glacies sum frigĭdus marmor.
What is more desirable than wisdom? Quis sum optabĭlis sapientia?
Nothing is more commendable than mildness and clemency. Nihil sum laudabĭlis lenĭtas et clementia.
Nothing is more pleasant to the mind than the light of truth. Nihil anĭmus jucundus sum verĭtas lux.
The eloquence of Xenophon was sweeter than honey. Xenophon eloquentia dulcis sum mel.
Silver is of less value than gold; gold, than the virtues. Argentum est minor[2] aurum; aurum, virtus. (*abl. plur.*)

---

[1] Governed by *feracior* by Rule 14th, which see.

[2] Genitive. See Rule 48th. From that Rule are excepted these genitives, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, and *minōris*.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE LXII. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole	oriente,	tenĕbræ fugiunt,
the sun	*rising,*	*darkness flies away.*
or *while the sun*	*riseth,*	
Opĕre	peracto,	ludēmus,
our work	*being finished,*	*let us play.*
or *when our work*	*is finished,*	

Latin Examples.

Xenŏphon philosŏphus, morte filii audītâ, vultu nihil[1] immutāto dixit: "Sciēbam me mortālem[2] genuisse."

Etiam sanāto vulnĕre, cicātrix manet.

Me duce, tutus eris.

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio, crucifixus.

Philippo, rege Macedoniæ, mortuo, filius ejus Perseus rebellāvit, ingentĭbus copiis parātis.

Bellis civilĭbus confectis, Cæsar dictātor in perpetuum[3] creātus est.

Interfecto Cæsăre, anno Urbis septingentesĭmo nono,[4] bel-

---

[1] Nihil is governed by *secundum*, '*as to*,' understood.

[2] *Illum* is understood, with which mortālem agrees.

[3] *Tempus* is understood: the phrase, in perpetuum, means *perpetually, forever.*

[4] The Romans reckoned their dates from the founding of the city, as we do ours, from the birth of Christ. Rome was founded by Romulus 753 before Christ.

la civilia reparāta sunt. Ergo turbātâ republicâ, Antonius, multis sceleribus commissis, a senātu hostis judicātus est.

His rebus gestis, omni Galliâ pacātâ, tanta hujus belli ad barbăros opinio perlāta est, ut ab nationibus, quæ trans Rhenum incolĕrent, mitterentur legāti ad Cæsărem, quæ[1] se obsĭdes datūras, imperāta factūras pollicerentur.

English Examples.

He came to Rome when Marius was consul: (*Marius being consul.*)	Marius consul, Roma venit.
When nature is our guide, (*nature being our guide,*) we can by no means err.	Natūra dux, nullus modus[2] erro possum.
The cause being removed, the effect is removed.	Causa amoveo, res ipse aufero.
If benevolence be taken away, (*benevolence being taken away,*) all pleasure is removed from life.	Benevolentia tollo, omnis oblectātio ab vita removeo.
Laying aside diversion, (*diversion being laid aside,*) let us attend to serious things.	Amoveo ludus, serius quæro. (*sub. pres.*)

[1] *Quæ* agrees with *natiōnes* understood.
[2] Ablative, by Rule 49th.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

THE irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight ; *sum, eo, queo, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, fĕro,* and *fio,* with their compounds.

But properly there are only six ; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo.*

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, ob-, præ-, sub-, supersum,* and *insum,* which wants the preterite ; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse,* &c.

Prosum, *to do good,* has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e.*
Prosum, prodesse, profui.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est ; pro-sŭmus, prod-estis, &c.
Imp. Prod-ĕram, prod-ĕras, prod-ĕrat ; prod-erāmus, &c.
Per. Pro-fui, pro-fuisti, pro-fuit ; pro-fuĭmus, pro-fuistis, &c.
Plu. Pro-fuĕram, pro-fuĕras, pro-fuĕrat ; pro-fuerāmus, &c.
Fut. Prod-ĕro, prod-ĕris, prod-ĕrit ; prod-erĭmus, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pro-sim, pro-sis, pro-sit ; pro-sĭmus, pro-sĭtis, pro-sint.
Imp. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset ; prod-essēmus, &c.
Per. Pro-fuĕrim, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit ; pro-fuerĭmus, &c.
Plu. Pro-fuissem, pro-fuisses, pro-fuisset ; pro-fuissēmus, &c.
Fut. Pro-fuĕro, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit ; pro-fuerĭmus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. 2. Prod-es *or* prod-esto, 2. Prod-este *or* prod-estōte,
3. Prod-esto ; 3. Pro-sunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Prod-esse. *Fut.* Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.
Per. Pro-fuisse. Fuisse pro-futūrus.

Participle.

Fut. Pro-futūrus.

Possum is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum*: and is thus conjugated:

Possum, posse, pŏtui. *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possum, pŏtes, pŏtest; possŭmus, potestis, possunt.
Imp. Pot-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat; -erāmus, -erātis, -ĕrant.
Per. Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uĭmus, -uistis, -uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu. Pot-uĕram, -uĕras, -uĕrat; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uĕrant.
Fut. Pot-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit; -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -ĕrunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -simus, -sītis, -sint.
Imp. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -sētis, -sent.
Per. Pot-uĕrim, -uĕris, -uĕrit; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.
Plu. Pot-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uisētis, -uissent.
Fut. Pot-uĕro, -uĕris, -uĕrit; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

EO, ire, ivi, ĭtum. *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo, is, it; īmus, ītis, eunt.
Imp. Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibāmus, ibātis, ibant.
Per. Ivi, isti, ivit; ivĭmus, istis, ivērunt *or* ivēre.
Plu. Iveram, iveras, iverat; iverāmus, iverātis, iverant.
Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibĭmus, ibĭtis, ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam, eas, eat; eāmus, eātis, eant.
Imp. Irem, ires, iret; irēmus, irētis, irent.

Per. Ivĕrim, ivĕris, ivĕrit ; iverĭmus, iverĭtis, ivĕrint.
Plu. Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset ; ivissēmus, ivissētis, ivissent.
Fut. Ivĕro, ivĕris, ivĕrit ; iverĭmus, iverĭtis, ivĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. I, Ito ; ite, itōte, eunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ire.
Per. Ivisse.
Fut. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fut. Itūrus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

VOLO, velle, vŏlui. *To will*, or *to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Vŏl-o, vis, vult ; volŭmus, vultis, volunt.
Imp Vol-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.
Per. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uĭmus, -uistis, -uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu. Vol-uĕram, -uĕras, -uĕrat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uĕrant.
Fut. Vol-am, -es, -et ; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Velim, velis, velit ; velīmus, velītis, velint.
Imp. Vellem, velles, vellet ; vellēmus, vellētis, vellent.
Per. Vol-uĕrim, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.
Plu. Vol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissētis, -uissent.
Fut. Vol-uĕro, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Velle. *Per.* Voluisse.

Participle.

Pr. Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult ; nolŭmus, non-vultis, nolunt.
Imp. Nol-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.

Per. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uĭmus, -uistis, -uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu. Nol-uĕram, -uĕras, -uĕrat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uĕrant.
Fut. Nolam, noles, nolet ; nolēmus, nolētis, nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Nolim, nolis, nolit ; nolīmus, nolītis, nolint.
Imp. Nollem, nolles, nollet ; nollēmus, nollētis, nollent.
Per. Nol-uĕrim, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.
Plu. Nol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissētis, -uissent.
Fut. Nol-uĕro, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.

	Imperative.		*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
	2. *Sing.*	2. *Plur.*		
Pr.	Noli *or* Nolīto.	nolīte *or* nolitōte.	*Pr.* Nolle.	*Pr.* Nolens.
			Per. Noluisse.	*The rest wanting*

MALO, malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Māl-o, mavis, mavult ; malŭmus, mavultis, malunt.
Imp. Mal-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.
Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uĭmus, -uistis, -uĕrunt *or* -uēre.
Plu. Mal-uĕram, -uĕras, -uĕrat ; -uerāmus, -uerātis, -uĕrant.
Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et ; &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit ; malīmus, malītis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet ; mallēmus, mallētis, mallent.
Per. Mal-uĕrim, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.
Plu. Mal-uissem, -uisses, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissētis, -uissent.
Fut. Mal-uĕro, -uĕris, -uĕrit ; -uerĭmus, -uerĭtis, -uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Malle. *Per.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tŭli, lātum. *To carry, to bring,* or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĕro, fers, fert ; ferĭmus, fertis, ferunt.

Imp. Fer-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat ; -ebāmus, -ebātis, -ēbant.
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit ; tulĭmus, tulistis, tulērunt *or* -ēre.
Plu. Tul-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat ; -erāmus, -erātis, -ĕrant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret ; ferēmus, ferētis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Feram, feras, ferat ; ferāmus, ferātis, ferant.
Imp. Ferrem, ferres, ferret ; ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent.
Per. Tul-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit ; -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -ĕrint.
Plu. Tul-issem, -isses, -isset ; -issēmus, -issētis, -issent.
Fut. Tul-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit ; -erĭmus, -erĭtis, ĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. { Fer, / Ferto, } ferto; { ferte, / fertōte, } ferunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Fĕrens.	Ferendum,	1. Lātum.
Fut. Latūrus, -a, -um.	Ferendi,	2. Lātu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, ferri, lātus. *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĕror, ferris *or* ferre, fertur ; ferĭmur, ferimĭni, feruntur.
Imp. Fer-ēbar, -ebāris *or* -ebāre, -ebātur ; -ebāmur, -ebamĭni, -ebantur.
Per. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fŭĕram, &c.
Fut. Ferar, ferēris *or* ferēre, ferētur ; ferēmur, feremĭni, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, ferāris *or* ferāre, ferātur ; ferāmur, feramĭni, ferantur.
Imp. Ferrer, ferrēris *or* ferrēre, ferrētur ; ferrēmur, ferremĭni, ferrentur.
Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fŭĕrim, &c.
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Latus fŭĕro, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Ferre *or* fertor, fertor ; ferimĭni, feruntor.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferri.

Per. Esse *or* fuisse latus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Per. Latus, -a, -um

Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um

FIO, fiĕri, factus. *To be made* or *done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fio, fis, fit ; fimus, fitis, fiunt.

Imp. Fiēbam, fiēbas, fiēbat ; fiebāmus, fiebātis, fiēbant.

Per. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.

Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fuĕram, &c.

Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet ; fiēmus, fiētis, fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat ; fiāmus, fiātis, fiant.

Imp. Fiĕrem, fiĕres, fiĕret ; fierēmus, fierētis, fiĕrent.

Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuĕrim, &c.

Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.

Fut. Factus fuĕro, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. { Fi, / Fito. } fito ; { fite, / fitōte, } fiunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Fiĕri.

Per. Esse *or* fuisse factus, -a, -um

Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Per. Factus -a, -um.

Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called Neuter Passive *Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sŏleo, solēre, solĭtus*, to use ; *audeo, audēre, ausus*, to dare ; *gaudeo, gaudēre, gavīsus*, to rejoice ; *fīdo, fidĕre, fisus*, to trust. So, *confīdo*, to trust ; and *diffīdo*, to distrust ; which also have *confīdi*, and *diffīdi*. Some add *mœreo, mœrēre, mœstus*, to be sad ; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say

jurātus sum, and *cænātus sum*, for *jurāvi* and *cænāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapŭlo*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, to be beaten *or* whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cæpi*, and *mĕmĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs;* though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, *or* have hated, *oděram*, *oděrim*, *odissem*, *oděro*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osūrus; exōsus*, *perōsus*.

Cæpi, I begin, *or* have begun, *cæpĕram*, *-ĕrim*, *-issem*, *-ĕro*, *-isse*. Supine, *cæptu*. Participles, *cæptus*, *cæptūrus*.

Mĕmĭni, I remember, *or* have remembered, *meminĕram*, *-ĕrim*, *-issem*, *-ĕro*, *-isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementōte*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum:* and always *exōsus*, *perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi*, *perōdi*. We say, *opus cæpit fiĕri*, or *cæptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Fŭro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus we say, *daris*, *datur;* but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fŏrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, *or* I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow: *cedo*, tell thou, *or* give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. *Pr.*	Aio,	ais,	ait;	——	——	aiunt.
Imp.	Aiēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	——	aisti,	——	——	——	——
Sub. *Pr.*	——	aias,	aiat;	——	aiātis,	aiant.
Imp.	Ai.			Part. *Pr.*	Aiens.	
Ind. *Pr.*	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit;	-quĭmus,	-quĭtis	

Imp. —— —— inquiēbat; —— —— inquiēbant.
Per. —— inquisti, —— —— —— ——
Fut. —— inquies, inquiet; —— —— ——

Imp. Inque, inquĭto. Part. *Pr.* Inquiens.

Sub. *Imp. Plu.* Fŏrem, fores, foret; forēmus, forētis, forent.

Inf. Forę, *to be hereafter*, or *to be about to be*, the same with *esse futūrus*.

Sub. *Pr.* Ausim, ausis, ausit; —— —— ——
Per Faxim, faxis, faxit; —— —— faxint.
Fut Faxo, faxis, faxit; —— faxĭtis, faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecĕrim* and *fecĕro*.

Imp. Ave *or* avēto; *plur.* avēte *or* avetōte. Inf. avēre.
—— Salve *or* salvēto; — salvēte *or* salvetōte. — salvēre.

Ind. *Fut.* —— Salvēbis.

Imp. *second pers. sing.* Cedo, *plur.* cedīte.

Ind. *pres. first pers. sing.* Quæso, *plur.* quæsŭmus.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

Abdo, abdĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtum ; act. *to conceal, to plunge.*
Abeo, abīre, abīvi, abĭtum ; neut. *to depart, to go away.*
Absolvo, absolvĕre, absolvi, absolūtum ; act. *to acquit.*
Absterreo, absterrēre, absterrui, absterrĭtum ; act. *to frighten.*
Abstinentia, abstinentiæ ; fem. *abstinence, integrity.*
Absum, abesse, abfui ; irreg. *to be absent.* See *sum*, page 53.
Abundè ; adv. *enough, sufficiently.*
Abundo, abundāre, abundāvi, abundātum ; neut. *to abound.*
Abūtor, abūti, abūsus sum ; dep. *to abuse.*
Ac ; conj. *and.*
Accēdo, accedĕre, accessi, accessum ; act. *to approach.*
Accĭdit ; imper. *it happened.*
Accĭdo, accidĕre, accidi ; supine wanting ; neut. *to fall out, to happen.*
Accipio, accipĕre, accēpi, acceptum ; act. *to receive.*
Accipĭter, accipĭtris ; masc. *a hawk.*
Accūso, accusāre, accusāvi, accusātum ; act. *to accuse.*
Acerbus, acerba, acerbum ; gen. acerbi ; *sour, cruel, cross.*
Achilles, Achillis ; masc. *Achilles*, a Grecian general.
Acies, aciēi ; fem. *an army.*
Acta, actæ ; fem. *a shore.*
Actium, Actii ; neut. *Actium*, a promontory of Epīrus, in Greece.
Acus, acûs ; fem. *a needle.*
Acūtus, acūta, acūtum ; gen. acūti ; *sharp, quick, talented.*
Adămas, adamantis ; masc. *a diamond.*
Adeo, adire, adīvi, *and* adii, adĭtum ; neut. *to go to, to approach.*
Adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum ; dep. *to obtain.*
Adjŭvo, adjuvāre, adjūvi, adjūtum ; act. *to help, to assist.*
Admirabĭlis, admirabĭlis, admirabĭle ; adj. *admirable, wonderful.*
Admĭror, admirāri, admirātus sum ; dep. *to admire, to wonder at.*
Admŏdùm ; adv. *very, very much.*

CONTRACTIONS IN THE VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

masc. for masculine gender.	neut. for neuter gender.
fem. for feminine gender.	com. for common gender.

The ending of the genitive case, of course, determines the declension. See page 4

VERBS.

act. for an active verb.	dep. for a deponent verb.
pass. for a passive verb.	imper. for an impersonal verb.
neut. for a neuter verb.	irreg. for an irregular verb.

The syllable before *re*, of the infinitive mode, of course, determines the conjugation. See page 52.

☞ The adjectives are declined through the nominative; and the genitive case masculine is given.

pron. for a pronoun.	conj. for a conjunction.
part. for a participle.	comp. for the comparative degree.
adv. for an adverb.	super. for the superlative degree.
prep. for a preposition.	gen. for the genitive case.
inter. for an interjection.	ind. indeclinable.

Admoneo, admonēre, admonui, admonĭtum ; act. *to remind, to admonish.*

Adno, adnāre, adnāvi, adnātum ; neut. *to swim to.*

Adolescens, adolescentis ; com. *a young man* or *woman.*

Adōro, adorāre, adorāvi, adorātum ; act. *to adore.*

Adsum, adesse, adfui ; irreg. (see *sum*, page 53,) *to be present.*

Advenio, advenīre, advēni, adventum ; neut. *to come to.*

Adversus, adversa, adversum ; adj. *opposite, adverse, hostile.*

Ædifĭco, ædificāre, ædificāvi, ædificātum ; act. *to build.*

Ægrōto, ægrotāre, ægrotāvi, ægrotātum ; neut. *to be sick.*

Ægyptius, Ægyptia, Ægyptium ; adj. *Egyptian.*

Ægyptus, Ægypti ; fem. *Ægypt*, a part of Africa.

Ænēas, Ænēæ ; dat. Ænēæ ; acc. Ænēam *or* Ænēan ; voc. Ænēa ; abl. Ænēâ ; *Æneas*, a Trojan prince.

Æquus, æqua, æquum ; gen. æqui ; *equal.*

Æs, æris ; neut. *copper, money.*

Æstas, æstātis ; fem. *summer.*

Æstīmo, æstimāre, æstimāvi, æstimātum ; act. *to esteem, to value.*

Ætas, ætātis ; fem. *age.*

Æthiopia, Æthiopiæ ; fem. *Æthiopia*, a country in Africa.

Affĕro, afferre, attŭli, allātum ; act. *to bring.*

Affluo, affluĕre, affluxi, affluxum ; neut. *to abound.*

Afrĭca, Afrĭcæ ; fem. *Africa.*

Ager, agri ; masc. *a field.*

Agger, aggĕris ; masc. *a mound, a rampart.*

Agnosco, agnoscĕre, agnōvi, agnĭtum ; act. *to acknowledge.*

Agnus, agni ; masc. *a lamb.*

Ago, agĕre, egi, actum ; act. *to drive, to do.* This verb must be translated according to the noun which it governs ; as, agĕre navim, *to steer a ship ;* agĕre vitam, *to pass a life.*

Agricŏla, agricŏlæ ; masc. *a husbandman.*

Albus, alba, album ; gen. albi ; *white.*

Alcibiădes, Alcibiădis ; masc. *Alcibiades*, an Athenian

Alexander, Alexandri ; masc. *Alexander*, King of Macedon.

Algor, algŏris ; masc. *cold.*

Aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum ; gen. aliēni ; *another man's, foreign, improper.*

Alĭquis, alĭqua, alĭquod *or* alĭquid ; gen. alĭcŭjus ; *some, some person* or *thing.*

Allobrŏges, Allobrŏgum ; masc. the *Allobroges*, a people of ancient Gaul.

Alo, alĕre, alui, alĭtum *and* altum ; act. *to nourish.*

Alter, altĕra, altĕrum ; gen. altĕrius, dat. altĕri ; adj. *one of two, another.*

Altus, alta, altum ; gen. alti ; *high.*

Amazon, Amazŏnis ; masc. *the Amazon*, a river of South America.

Ambĭtus, ambĭtûs ; masc. literally means *going around*, and was generally applied to those who went around to solicit offices ; hence it came to mean *bribery.*

Ambo, ambæ, ambo ; gen. ambōrum ; *both :* like *duo :* see page 37.

Ambŭlo, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātum ; neut. *to walk.*

America, Americæ ; fem. *America.*

Amicitia, amicitiæ ; fem. *friendship.*

Amicus, amici ; masc. *a friend.*

Amīcus, amica, amicum ; gen. amīci ; *friendly.*

Amnis, amnis ; masc. *a river.*

Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum ; act. *to love.*

Amor, amōris ; masc. *love.*

Anaxagŏras, Anaxagŏræ ; masc. *Anaxagoras*, a Grecian philosopher

Anchises ; gen. Anchisæ ; dat. -æ, acc. -em *or* -en ; voc. Anchise *or* Anchisa ; abl. Anchise *or* Anchisa, (Greek noun 1st dec.) *Anchises*, a distinguished Grecian general at the Trojan war.

Anima, animæ ; fem. *the soul.*

Animal, animālis ; neut. *an animal.*

Animus, animi ; masc. *the mind, courage.*

Annuo, annuĕre, annui ; (no supine ;) act. and neut. *to nod to, to favour.*

Annus, anni ; masc. *a year.*

Antecēdo, antecedĕre, antecessi, antecessum ; act. *to go before, to precede.*

Antecello, antecellĕre, antecellui ; (no supine ;) act. *to excel.*

Antepōno, anteponĕre, anteposui, antepositum ; act. *to prefer.*

Antevenio, antevenīre, antevēni, anteventum ; neut. *to precede, to go before.*

Antiŏchus, Antiŏchi ; masc. *Antiochus*, a Grecian philosopher.

Antīquus, antīqua, antīquum ; gen. antīqui ; *ancient.*

Antonius, Antonii ; masc. *Antony*, an infamous Roman senator.

Antrum, antri ; neut. *a cave, a cavern.*
Anxius, anxia, anxium ; *anxious.*
Apenninus, Apennini ; masc. *a range of the Apennine mountains.*
Aperio, aperīre, aperui, apertum ; act. *to open.*
Appetītus, appetītūs ; masc. *the appetite ;* in the plural number, *passions, affections.*
Aptè ; adv. *fitly, properly.*
Aptus, apta, aptum ; gen. apti ; *fit, suitable.*
Aqua, aquæ ; fem. *water.*
Arbĭtror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum ; dep. *to think, to suppose.*
Arbor, arbŏris ; fem. *a tree.*
Arca, arcæ ; fem. *a chest.*
Arcesso, arcessĕre, arcessīvi, arcessītum ; act. *to call, to send for.*
Arduus, ardua, arduum ; gen. ardui ; *high, steep, difficult.*
Argentum, argenti ; neut. *silver.*
Arguo, arguĕre, argui, argūtum ; act. *to accuse, to convict.*
Ariovistus, Ariovisti ; masc. *Ariovistus,* a German prince.
Aristotĕles, Aristotĕlis ; masc. *Aristotle,* a Grecian philosopher.
Arma, armōrum ; neut. *arms :* used only in the plural.
Arōma, aromătis ; neut. seldom used in the singular. In the plural, aromăta, aromătum ; *spices.*
Ars, artis ; fem. *art.*
Arundo, arundĭnis ; fem. *a reed.*
Arvum, arvi ; neut. *a field.*
As, assis ; masc. *a farthing, a cent*
Asia, Asiæ ; fem. *Asia,* one of the four quarters of the world.
Asper, aspĕra, aspĕrum ; gen. aspĕri ; *rough, adverse.*
Assĕquor, assĕqui, assecūtus ; dep. *to obtain, to reach.*
Assiduus, assidua, assiduum ; gen. assidui ; *constant, perpetual.*
Assyrius, Assyria, Assyrium ; adj. Assyrian, *pertaining to Assyria.*
At ; conj. *but.*
Athēnæ, Athenārum ; fem. *Athens,* a city of Greece. (used only in the plural.)
Atheniensis, Atheniensis ; masc. *an Athenian.*
Atlantĭcus, Atlantĭca, Atlantĭcum ; (like bonus ;) *the Atlantic ocean*
Atque ; conj. *and.*
Attentio, attentiōnis ; fem. *attention.*
Attentus, attenta, attentum ; gen. attenti ; *attentive.*

Attĕro, atterĕre, attrīvi, attrītum ; act. *to wear out.*

Attĭcus, Attĭci ; masc. *Atticus*, a celebrated Roman knight, who was an intimate friend of Cicero.

Auctor, auctōris ; masc. *an author, a founder.*

Auctorĭtas, auctoritātis ; fem. *authority.*

Audacia, audaciæ, fem. *boldness.*

Audax, audax, audax ; gen. audācis ; *bold, brave.*

Audens, audens, audens ; gen. audentis ; *bold, daring.*

Audio, audīre, audīvi, auditum ; act. *to hear.*

Aufĕro, aufĕrre, abstŭli, ablātum ; act. *to take away.*

Aufugio, aufugĕre, aufūgi, aufugĭtum ; act. *to run away from, to escape.*

Augustus, Augusti ; masc. *August*, the name of a month.

Augustus, Augusti ; masc. *Augustus*, a Roman emperor.

Aurum, auri ; neut. *gold.*

Aut ; conj. *or.*

Auxilium, auxilii ; neut. *aid, assistance, auxiliary forces.*

Avaritia, avaritiæ ; fem. *avarice.*

Avārus, avāra, avārum ; gen. avāri ; *covetous*, and when not connected with any noun, *an avaricious man.*

Avĭdus, avĭda, avĭdum ; gen. avĭdi ; *desirous, greedy of.*

Avis, avis ; fem. *a bird.*

Avus, avi ; masc. *a grandfather, an ancestor.*

Babylon, Babylōnis ; fem. *Babylon*, a city of Asia.

Barbărus, barbări ; masc. *a barbarian:* properly it is an adjective having *homo* understood.

Beātè ; adv. *happily.*

Beātus, beāta, beātum ; gen. beāti ; *happy.*

Bellum, belli ; neut. *war.*

Benè ; adv. *well.*

Benefacio, benefacĕre, benefēci, benefactum ; act. *to benefit, to do good to.*

Beneficium, beneficii ; neut. *a kindness.*

Benevolentia, benevolentiæ ; fem. *benevolence.*

Benevŏlus, benevŏla, benevŏlum ; gen. benevŏli ; *benevolent, kind.*

Benignus, benigna, benignum ; gen. benigni ; *kind.*

Bestia, bestiæ ; fem. *brutes, beasts.*

Bibo, bibĕre, bibi, bibĭtum ; act. *to drink.*

Biduum, bidui ; neut. *the space of two days.*

Bonĭtas, bonitātis ; fem. *goodness.*

Bonus, bona, bonum ; gen. boni ; *good.* (Comp. *melior ; super. optĭmus.*)

Brevi ; adv. *in a short time.*

Brevĭtas, brevitātis ; fem. *shortness, brevity.* (From brevis, *short.*)

Brevis, brevis, breve ; adj. *short.*

Brittania, Brittaniæ ; fem. *Britain, England.*

Brundusium, Brundusii ; neut. *Brundusium,* a town in Italy.

Brutus, Bruti ; masc. *Brutus,* the name of many illustrious Romans. See Class. Dictionary.

Cædes, cædis ; fem. *slaughter, murder.*

Cæsar, Cæsăris ; masc. *Cæsar,* a great Roman general.

Cæter, cætĕra, cætĕrum ; gen. cætĕri ; *the other, the rest.*

Cætus, more generally written cœtus, cœtûs ; masc. *an assembly.*

Calamitōsus, calamitōsa, calamitōsum ; gen. calamitōsi ; *calamitous, miserable.*

Calcar, calcăris ; neut. *a spur.*

Callĭdus, callĭda, callĭdum ; gen. callĭdi ; *warm, hot.*

Callĭdus, callĭda, callĭdum ; gen. callĭdi ; *wise, crafty.*

Calumnia, calumniæ ; fem. *slander, calumny.*

Canis, canis ; com. *a dog.*

Cannæ, Cannārum ; fem. plural ; *Cannæ,* a town in the south of Italy.

Capax, capax, capax ; gen. capācis ; *capacious, large.*

Capio, capĕre, cepi, captum ; act. *to take, to receive.*

Cappadocia, Cappadociæ ; fem. *Cappadocia,* a country of Asia Minor.

Captus, capta, captum ; gen. capti ; *taken, bereft, deprived of*

Capŭlus, capŭli ; masc. and capŭlum, capŭli ; neut. *a hilt* or *handle*

Caput, capĭtis ; neut. *a head.*

Carcer, carcĕris ; masc. *a prison.*

Careo, carēre, carui, carĭtum ; neut. *to want, to be destitute of.*

Carmen, carmĭnis ; neut. *a song, a poem, a verse.*

Carthagenienses, Carthageniensium ; masc. *Carthagenians.*

Carthāgo, Carthagĭnis ; fem. *Carthage,* a city of Africa, opposite to Rome.

Carus, cara, carum ; gen. cari ; *dear.*

Castrum, castri ; neut. *a castle :* generally used in the plural, Castra, castrōrum, meaning *camp* or *camps.*

Casus, casūs ; masc. *a fall, a misfortune.*

Catēna, catēnæ ; fem. *a chain.*

Catilina, Catilinæ ; masc. *Catiline,* a Roman who formed a conspiracy to betray his country.

Cato, Catōnis ; masc. *Cato,* a Roman philosopher.

Catŭlus, catŭli ; masc. *a whelp ; the young of all animals.*

Causa, causæ ; fem. *cause.*

Caveo, cavēre, cavi, cautum ; act. *to beware, to take care of.*

Cedo, cedĕre, cessi, cessum ; act. *to yield, to give place to.*

Celer, *or* celĕris, celĕris, celĕre ; gen. celĕris ; *swift, quick.*

Celerĭtas, celeritātis ; fem. *celerity.*

Celerĭter ; adv. *quickly.*

Census, censūs ; masc. *a man's estate, wealth.*

Centum ; ind. *a hundred.*

Ceres, Cerĕris ; fem. *Ceres,* the goddess of tillage.

Certāmen, certamĭnis ; neut. *a contest, a battle.*

Certus, certa, certum ; gen. certi ; *certain, sure.*

Cethēgus, Cethēgi ; masc. *Cethēgus,* a Roman, concerned in Catiline's conspiracy.

Charta, chartæ ; fem. *paper.*

Cibus, cibi ; masc. *meat, food.*

Cicātrix, cicatrīcis ; fem. *a wound.*

Cicĕro, Cicerōnis ; masc. *Cicero,* the great Roman orator.

Cilicia, Ciliciæ ; fem. *Cilicia,* a country of Asia Minor.

Cimon, Cimōnis ; masc. *Cimon,* an illustrious Athenian.

Cingo, cingĕre, cinxi, cinctum ; act. *to gird, to surround.*

Circumvĕho, circumvehĕre, circumvexi, circumvectum ; act. to *carry about.*

Circumvenio, circumvenīre, circumvēni, circumventum ; act. *to surround, to besiege.*

Citō ; adv. *quickly, shortly.*

Civilis, civĭle, civile ; gen. civilis ; *civil, pertaining to the state*

Civis, civis ; com. *a citizen.*

Civĭtas, civĭtātis ; fem. *a city.*

Clam ; adv. *secretly.*

Clamo, clamāre, clamāvi, clamātum ; act. *to cry out.*

Clamor, clamōris ; masc. *a loud noise, a shout, a clamour.*
Claritūdo, claritudĭnis ; fem. *renown, fame.*
Clarus, clara, clarum ; gen. clari ; *famous.*
Classis, classis ; fem. *a fleet.*
Clemens, clemens, clemens ; gen. clementis ; *merciful, mild.*
Clementĭa, clementiæ ; fem. *clemency.*
Clodius, Clodii ; masc. *Clodius*, an infamous Roman, who was killed by Milo.
Cœptum, cœpti ; neut. *a beginning, an enterprise.*
Cœtus, cœtûs ; masc. *an assembly.*
Cogitatio, cogitatiōnis ; fem. *a thought.*
Cogĭto, cogitāre, cogitāvi, cogitātum ; act. *to think.*
Cognosco, cognoscĕre, cognōvi, cognĭtum ; act. *to know.*
Cohors, cohortis ; fem. *a cohort*, a band of soldiers.
Collĭgo, colligĕre, collēgi, collectum ; act. *to collect.*
Collis, collis ; masc. *a hill.*
Colloquium, colloquii ; neut. *conversation, conference.*
Colo, colĕre, colui, cultum ; act. *to cultivate, to worship.*
Color, colōris ; masc. *a colour.*
Colossus, colossi ; masc. *a colossus*, an image or statue much larger than the life.
Columba, columbæ ; fem. *a dove.*
Comes, comĭtis ; com. *a companion, an attendant.*
Commemŏro, commemorāre, commemorāvi, commemorātum ; act. *to commemorate, to mention.*
Committo, committĕre, commīsi, commissum ; act. *to commit, to fight :* committĕre pugnam, *to join battle.*
Commŏdus, commŏda, commŏdum ; gen. commŏdi ; *convenient.*
Communis, communis, commune ; gen. communis ; *common.*
Compăro, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātum ; act. *to compare, to provide.*
Compello, compellĕre, compŭli, compulsum ; act. *to drive, to compel.*
Complector, complecti, complexus sum ; dep. *to embrace.*
Compōno, componĕre, composui, compositum ; act. *to compare, to place side by side.*
Comporto, comportāre, comportāvi, comportātum ; act. *to bring together.*

Compositè ; adv. *in order, orderly.*

Concēdo, concedĕre, concessi, concessum ; neut. *to yield to, to grant.*

Concupisco, concupiscĕre, concupīvi, concupītum ; act. *to covet, to desire.*

Condemno, condemnāre, condemnāvi, condemnātum ; act. *to condemn.*

Condo, condĕre, condĭdi, condĭtum ; act. *to hide, to build.*

Condūcit ; imper. *it is profitable.*

Condūco, conducĕre, conduxi, conductum ; act. *to conduct.*

Confĕro, conferre, contŭli, collātum ; act. *to bring, to compare ;* conferre se ; *to betake himself, to go.*

Conficio, conficĕre, confēci, confectum ; act. *to finish, to kill.*

Confīdo, confidĕre, confīdi, and confīsus sum ; *to confide in.*

Confirmo, confirmāre, confirmāvi, confirmātum ; act. *to confirm, to strengthen.*

Confiteor, confitēri, confessus sum ; dep. *to confess.*

Conjuratio, conjuratiōnis ; fem. *a combination, a conspiracy.* (Con, same as cum, *together*, and juro, *to swear.*)

Conjūro, conjurāre, conjurāvi, conjurātum ; act. *to conspire together, to plot ;* conjurāti, conjuratōrum ; *conspirators.*

Conjux, conjŭgis ; com. *a husband* or *wife.* (Con, *together*, and jungo, *to join.*)

Conscientia, conscientiæ ; fem. *conscience.*

Conscisco, consciscĕre, conscīvi, conscītum ; act. *to procure, to get.*

Conscius, conscia, conscium ; gen. conscii ; *conscious.*

Consĕquor, consĕqui, consecūtus sum ; dep. *to obtain, to attain.*

Conservo, conservāre, conservāvi, conservātum ; act. *to preserve.*

Consīdo, considĕre, consēdi, consessum ; neut. *to sit down.*

Consilium, consilii ; neut. *a design, counsel.*

Consōlor, consolāri, consolātus sum ; dep. *to console.*

Conspirātor, conspiratōris ; masc. *a conspirator.*

Constantia, constantiæ ; fem. *constancy.*

Constat ; imper. *it is evident.*

Consto, constāre, constĭti, constātum ; neut. *to stand together.*

Consuetūdo, consuetudĭnis ; fem. *custom.*

Consul, consŭlis ; masc. *a consul.*

Consulātus, consulātûs ; masc. *the consulship.*

Consŭlo, consulĕre, consului, consultum ; act. *to consult.*

Contemno, contemnĕre, contempsi, contemptum ; act. *to despise.*
Contendo, contendĕre, contendi, contentum ; act. and neut. *to stretch, to march.*
Contentio, contentiōnis ; fem. *contention.*
Contentus, contenta, contentum ; gen. contenti ; *content.*
Contiguus, contigua, contiguum ; gen. contigui ; *near, contiguous.*
Contineo, continēre, continui, contentum ; act. *to contain, to keep.*
Contra ; adv. *on the contrary, on the other hand.*
Contrucīdo, contrucidāre, contrucidāvi, contrucidātum ; act. *to slay, to kill.*
Contrarius, contraria, contrarium ; gen. contrarii ; *contrary to.*
Convenienter ; adv. *consistently, agreeably to.*
Convenio, convenīre, convēni, conventum ; neut. *to meet.*
Copia, copiæ ; fem. *an abundance ;* plur. copiæ ; *military forces.*
Cor, cordis ; neut. *the heart.*
Corpus, corpŏris ; neut. *a body.*
Cortex, cortĭcis ; masc. *or* fem. *a cork, the bark of a tree.*
Credo, credĕre, credĭdi, credĭtum ; act. *to believe.*
Cremo, cremāre, cremāvi, cremātum ; act. *to burn.*
Creo, creāre, creāvi, creātum ; act. *to create.*
Cresco, crescĕre, crevi, cretum ; neut *to grow, to increase.*
Crimen, crimĭnis ; neut. *crime, a fault.*
Crocodĭlus, crocodili, masc. *a crocodile.*
Crœsus, Crœsi ; masc. *Cræsus,* King of Lydia, famed for his wealth.
Crucifīgo, crucifigĕre, crucifixi, crucifixum ; act. *to crucify.*
Cruentus, cruenta, cruentum ; gen. cruenti ; *bloody, cruel.*
Crus, cruris ; neut. *the leg.*
Cubĭtus, cubĭti ; masc. *a cubit,* a measure of 18 inches.
Cuique ; dative of quisque, quæque, quodque ; *to each, to every one.*
Culpa, culpæ ; fem. *blame, a fault.*
Culter, cultri ; masc. *a knife.*
Cùm ; conj. *when.*
Cunaxa, Cunaxæ ; *Cunaxa,* a city of Asia Minor.
Cunctus, cuncta, cunctum ; gen. cuncti ; *all, the whole, altogether.*
Cupidĭtas, cupiditātis ; fem. *a desire.*
Cupĭdus, cupĭda, cupĭdum ; gen. cupĭdi ; *desirous.*
Cupio, cupĕre, cupīvi, cupītum ; act. *to desire.*
Cura, curæ ; fem. *care.*

Curo, curāre, curāvi, curātum ; act. *to take care of, to cure, to heal.*
Curro, currĕre, cucūrri, cursum ; neut. *to run.*
Currus, currûs, masc. *a chariot.*
Cursus, cursûs ; masc. *a course.*
Custodio, custodīre, custodīvi, custodītum ; act. *to guard.*
Cyrus, Cyri ; masc. *Cyrus*, King of Persia.
Damno, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātum ; act. *to condemn*
Debeo, debēre, debui, debĭtum ; act. *to owe, to be obliged ;* and when used with the infinitive, *I ought* or *should.*
Decēdo, decedĕre, decessi, decessum ; neut. *to depart.*
Decem ; a numeral adj. ind. *ten.*
Decerno, decernĕre, decrēvi, decrētum ; act. *to decree, to resolve.*
Decĭmus, decĭma, decĭmum ; gen. decĭmi ; *the tenth.*
Decus, decŏris ; neut. *an ornament.*
Dedĕcus, dedecŏris ; neut. *disgrace.*
Dedo, dedĕre, dedĭdi, dedĭtum ; act. *to submit, to give up.*
Defendo, defendĕre, defendi, defensum ; act. *to defend.*
Defetiscor, defetisci, defessus sum ; neut. *to be weary.*
Deficio, deficĕre, defēci, defectum ; act. *to leave*, or *fail one.*
Deinde ; adv. *afterwards.*
Delābor, delābi, delapsus sum ; dep. *to slip ; to fall to decay ; to flow, as a river.*
Delecto, delectāre, delectāvi, delectātum ; act. *to delight.*
Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum ; act. *to blot out, to destroy.*
Deliběro, deliberāre, deliberāvi, deliberātum ; act. *to deliberate.*
Delĭgo, deligĕre, delēgi, delectum ; act. *to choose*
Delphi, Delphōrum ; masc. *Delphi*, a city of Greece, famous for its oracle of Apollo.
Delphīnus, delphīni ; masc. *a dolphin.*
Dementia, dementiæ ; fem. *madness, folly.*
Demonstro, demonstrāre, demonstrāvi, demonstrātum ; act. *to show, to demonstrate.*
Demosthĕnes, Demosthĕnis ; masc. *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Grecian orator.
Dens, dentis ; fem. *a tooth.*
Deplōro, deplorāre, deplorāvi, deplorātum ; act. *to deplore.*
Deposco, deposcĕre, depoposci ; act. *to require, to demand.*

Desĕro, deserĕre, deserui, desertum; act. *to abandon.*
Deterreo, deterrēre, deterrui, deterrĭtum; act. *to deter.*
Detrimentum, detrimenti; neut. *hurt, detriment.*
Detrūdo, detrudĕre, detrūsi, detrūsum; act. *to push from.*
Deus, Dei; masc. *God.* Sometimes it is feminine, and signifies a *goddess.*
Diāna, Diānæ; fem. *Diana*, the goddess of hunting.
Dico, dicĕre, dixi, dictum; act. *to say.*
Dictātor, dictatōris; masc. *a dictator.*
Dies, diēi; masc. or fem. in the sing. and masc. in the plural; *a day.*
Difficĭlis, difficĭlis, diffic le; gen. difficĭlis; *difficult.*
Diffīdo, diffidĕre, diffīsus sum; neut. pass. *to distrust.*
Dignus, digna, dignum; gen. digni; *worthy.*
Dii, plural of Deus, for Dei, Deōrum; masc. *the gods.*
Diligentia, diligentiæ; fem. *diligence.*
Diogĕnes, Diogĕnis; masc. *Diogenes*, a Grecian philosopher.
Discēdo, discedĕre, discessi, discessum; neut. *to depart.*
Disciplīna, disciplīnæ; fem. *discipline, instruction, education.*
Discipŭlus, discipŭli; masc. *a scholar, a disciple, a learner.*
Disco, discĕre, didĭci; (no supine;) act. *to learn.*
Discordia, discordiæ; fem. *discord.*
Disertus, diserta, disertum; gen. diserti; *eloquent.*
Displiceo, displicĕre, displicui, displicĭtum; neut. *to displease.*
Dispūto, disputāre, disputāvi, disputātum; act. *to dispute, to argue.*
Distinctè; adv. *distinctly, methodically.*
Disto, distāre; neut. *to be distant.*
Diù; adv. *long;* comp. diutiùs; *longer;* super. diutissĭmè; *longest.*
Diutĭne; adv. *a long time.*
Dives, dives, dives; gen. divitĭs; *rich.*
Divīnus, divīna, divīnum; gen. divīni; *divine, noble.*
Divitiæ, divitiārum; fem. plur. *riches.*
Do, dāre, dedi, datum; act. *to give.*
Doceo, docēre, docui, doctum; act. *to teach.*
Doctrīna, doctrīnæ; fem. *knowledge, learning.*
Doctus, docta, doctum; gen. docti; part. or adj. *learned.*
Dolor, dolōris; masc. *pain, grief.*
Domĭnus, domĭni; masc. *a master.*
Domo, domāre, domui, domĭtum; act. *to subdue.*

Domus, domûs, *or* domi; fem. *a house.*
Dono, donāre, donāvi, donātum; act. *to give.*
Dormio, dormīre, dormīvi, dormītum; neut. *to sleep.*
Ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta; gen. ducentōrum; *two hundred.*
Duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum; act. *to lead, to induce, to draw.*
Dulcis, dulcis, dulce; gen. dulcis; *sweet.*
Dum; adv. *whilst.*
Dummŏdo; conj. *if, provided that.*
Duo, duœ, duo; gen. duōrum; *two.*
Duplex, duplex, duplex; gen. duplĭcis; *double, two-fold.*
Durus, dura, durum; gen. duri; *hard.*
Dux, ducis; masc. *a general, a leader.*
Edax, edax, edax; gen. edācis; *eating, consuming.*
Edĭtus, edĭta, edĭtum; gen. edĭti; pa.t. and adj. *descended from.*
Edo, edĕre, edĭdi, edĭtum; act. *to utter, to publish.*
Efficio, efficĕre, effēci, effectum; act. *to effect, to make.*
Effugio, effugĕre, effūgi, effugĭtum; act. *to escape.*
Egeo, egēre, egui; (no supine;) neut. *to need.*
Ego; pron. *I.* See page 41.
Egredior, egrĕdi, egressus sum; dep. *to go out.*
Egyptus; see Ægyptus.
Elephas, elephantis; masc. *an elephant;* and also, elephantus,—i.
Elis, Elĭdis; fem. *Elis,* a country of Peloponnesus.
Eloquentia, eloquentiæ; fem. *eloquençe.*
Emo, emĕre, emi, emptum; act. *to buy.*
Emolumentum, emolumenti; neut. *advantage, profit.*
Enim; conj. *for, indeed, truly.*
Ensis, ensis; masc. *a sword.*
Eō; adv. *to that pass, to that degree, to that pitch.*
Eo, īre, ivi, itum; neut. *to go.*
Epaminondas, Epaminondæ; masc. 1st dec. *Epaminondas,* a celebrated Theban general.
Ephĕsus, Ephĕsi; fem. *Ephesus,* a city of Asia Minor.
Epicūrus, Epicūri; masc. *Epicurus,* a Grecian philosopher.
Epistŏla, epistŏlæ; fem. *a letter, an epistle.*
Equanimĭtas, equanimitātis; fem. *equanimity.*
Eques, equĭtis; masc. *a horseman, a knight.*
Equestris, equestris, equestre; gen. equestris; *equestrian.*

Equĭdem; conj. *truly, verily.*
Equĭto, equitāre, equitāvi, equitātum; act. *to ride upon a horse.*
Equus, equi; masc. *a horse.*
Erādo, eradĕre, erāsi, erāsum; act. *to efface.*
Ergo; conj. *therefore.*
Eripio, eripĕre, eripui, ereptum; act. *to seize.*
Errātum, errāti; neut. *an error, vice.*
Erro, errāre, errāvi, errātum; neut. *to err.*
Error, errōris; masc. *an error.*
Erudio, erudīre, erudīvi and erudii, eruditum; act. *to teach.*
Esca, escæ; fem. *meat, food.*
Esuries, esurīēi; fem. *a desire to eat, hunger.*
Et; conj. *and.* When there are two *ets* following each other in the same sentence, the former *et* should be rendered *both*, and the latter *and.*
Eternus, eterna, eternum; gen. eterni; *eternal.*
Etiam; conj. *also.*
Etsi; conj. *though, although.*
Euphrātes, Euphrātis; masc. *the Euphrates*, a river of Mesopotamia.
Eurōpa, Eurōpæ; fem. *Europe*, one of the four quarters of the world.
Eurōtas, Eurōtæ, Eurōtæ, Eurōtam *or* Eurōtan, Eurōta, Eurōtâ; 1st dec. masc. *the Eurotas*, a river of Laconia, in *Greece.*
Evādo, evadĕre, evāsi, evāsum; neut. and act. *to get out of, to evade.*
Evenio, evenīre, evēni, eventum; neut. *to come out, to happen.*
Eventus, eventûs; masc. *an event, an issue.*
Excĭto, excitāre, excitāvi, excitātum; act. *to move, to excite.*
Exĕdo, exedĕre, exēdi, exēsum; act. *to eat, to consume.*
Exemplum, exempli; neut. *an example.*
Exeo, exīre, exīvi, exĭtum; neut. *to go out.*
Exercĭtus, exercĭtûs; masc. *an army.*
Eximius, eximia, eximium; gen. eximii; *choice, wonderful, remarkable.*
Existĭmo, existimāre, existimāvi, existimātum; act. *to think.*
Exitium, exitii; neut. *destruction.*
Expatior, expatiāri, expatiātus sum; dep. *to walk abroad.*
Expectatio, expectatiōnis; fem. *expectation.*

Expĕdit; imper. *it is profitable.*
Expeditio, expeditiōnis; fem. *an expedition.*
Expello, expellĕre, expŭli, expulsum; act. *to expel.*
Experior, experīri, expertus sum; dep. *to try.*
Expers, expers, expers; gen. expertis; *free from, void of.*
Expertus, experta, expertum; gen. experti; *skilful, experienced in.*
Explorātor, exploratōris; masc. *a scout, a spy.*
Extinguo, extinguĕre, extinxi, extinctum; act. *to extinguish, to kill.*
Exubĕro, exuberāre, exuberāvi, exuberātum; neut. *to abound.*
Exul, exŭlis; com. *an exile, a banished man* or *woman.*
Exuviæ, exuviārum; fem. *spoils.*
Fabius, Fabii; masc. *Fabius,* a Roman general.
Fabŭla, fabŭlæ; fem. *a fable.*
Facies, faciēi; fem. *a face.*
Facĭlè; adv. *easily;* comp. facilius; super. facillĭme.
Facĭnus, facinŏris; neut. *an action, a deed.*
Facio, facĕre, feci, factum; act. *to do, to make.* This verb, like *ago* and *habeo,* is construed variously, according to its noun, as, facĕre verba, *to speak, to hold a discourse.*
Facultas, facultātis; fem. *aptness, means, wealth.*
Fæx, fæcis; fem. *the dregs,* or *lees of wine, sediment.*
Fama, famæ; fem. *fame, report.*
Fames, famis; fem. *hunger.*
Famŭlor, famulāri, famulātus sum; dep. *to wait upon, to serve.*
Fatum, fati; neut. *fate.*
Faveo, favēre, favi, fautum; neut. *to favour.*
Felix, felix, felix; (see p. 34;) *happy.*
Fera, feræ; fem. *a wild beast.*
Ferax, ferax, ferax; gen. ferācis; *fertile.*
Ferè; adv. *almost.*
Ferīnus, ferīna, ferīnum; (like bonus;) *of a wild beast,* or *wild beast's*—as, pellis ferīna, *a wild beast's skin.*
Fero, ferre, tuli, latum; irreg. *to bear, to carry;* also, *to say;* as, ferunt, *they carry it about,* that is, *they say.*
Ferrum, ferri; neut. *iron, a sword.*
Fertĭlis, fertĭlis, fertĭle; (like mitis;) *fertile.*
Ficus, ficûs; fem. *a fig.*
Fides, fidēi; fem. *faith, credit.*

Fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle ; gen. fidēlis ; *faithful, trusty.*
Fido, fidĕre, fidi, and fisus sum ; *to trust.*
Filia, filiæ ; fem. *a daughter.*
Filius, filii ; masc. *a son.*
Finio, finīre, finīvi, finītum ; act. *to finish.*
Finis, finis ; masc. *an end, a border, a limit.*
Flamma, flammæ ; fem. *a flame.*
Fleo, flēre, flevi, flētum ; act. *to weep.*
Florens, florens, florens ; gen. florentis ; *flourishing.*
Floreo, florēre, florui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to flourish.*
Flumen, flumĭnis ; neut. *a river.*
Fluo, fluĕre, fluxi, fluxum ; neut. *to flow.*
Fluvius, fluvii ; masc. *a river.*
Fœdus, fœda, fœdum ; gen. fœdi ; *filthy, base, vile.*
Fœdus, fœdĕris ; neut. *a league, a treaty.*
Fœmĭna, fœmĭnæ ; fem. *a woman.*
Fons, fontis ; fem. *a fountain.*
Foris ; adv. *abroad, without.*
Formōsus, formōsa, formōsum ; gen. formōsi ; *beautiful.*
Fortis, fortis, forte ; gen. fortis ; *brave.*
Fortĭter, fortiùs, fortissĭmè ; adv. *bravely, more bravely, most bravely.*
Fortitūdo, fortitudĭnis ; fem. *fortitude, bravery.*
Fortūna, fortūnæ ; fem. *fortune.*
Fossa, fossæ ; fem. *a ditch.*
Frænum, fræni ; neut. *a bit, a bridle.*
Frango, frangĕre, fregi, fractum ; act. *to break.*
Frater, fratris ; masc. *a brother.*
Fraus, fraudis ; fem. *fraud.*
Frequento, frequentāre, frequentāvi, frequentātum ; act. *to frequent, to people a place.*
Fretum, freti ; *a strait, a frith.*
Fretus, freta, fretum ; gen. freti ; *trusting to, relying on.*
Frigĭdus, frigĭda, frigĭdum ; (like bonus ;) *frigid, cold.*
Frons, frondis ; fem. *a leaf of a tree.*
Frugalĭtas, frugalitātis ; fem. *frugality.*
Fruges, frugum ; fem. plur. *fruit, corn.*
Frumentum, frumenti ; neut. *corn.*

Fruor, frui, fructus, *or* fruĭtus sum ; dep. *to enjoy.*

Fugio, fugĕre, fugi, fugĭtum ; act. *to fly from, to escape.*

Fugo, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātum ; act. *to put to flight.*

Fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to shine.*

Fulvia, Fulviæ ; fem. *Fulvia*, a woman of Rome, who made known to Cicero the designs which Catiline and the other conspirators had against his life.

Fundamentum, fundamenti ; neut. *a foundation.*

Fundo, fundāre, fundāvi, fundātum ; act. *to found, to establish.*

Fundo, fundĕre, fudi, fusum ; act. *to pour out, to vanquish.*

Fungor, fungi, functus sum ; dep. *to discharge an office* or *duty.*

~~Funis, funis ; masc.~~ *a rope.*

Fur, furis ; com. *a thief.*

Furor, furōris ; masc. *madness, fury.*

Furtum, furti ; neut. *theft.*

Futūrus, futūra, futūrum ; gen. futūri ; (part. of esse ;) *about to be, the future.*

Gaditānus, Gaditāna, Gaditānum ; gen. Gaditāni ; *of, or belonging to ancient Gades ;* the *fretum Gaditānum*, are what are now called the *Straits of Gibraltar.*

Galea, galeæ ; fem. *a helmet.*

Galli, Gallōrum ; masc. *the Gauls.*

Gallia, Galliæ ; fem. *ancient Gaul*, now *France.*

Gallus, Galli ; masc. *a Gaul.*

Gaudeo, gaudēre, gavisus sum ; neut. *to rejoice.*

Gemma, gemmæ ; fem. *a gem, a rich treasure.*

Gener, generi ; masc. *a son-in-law.*

Gens, gentis ; fem. *a nation.*

Geographia, geographiæ ; fem. *geography.*

Germāni, Germanōrum ; masc. *the Germans.*

Gero, gerĕre, gessi, gestum ; act. *to carry on.*

Gestio, gestire, gestīvi, gestītum ; neut. *to rejoice.*

Gigno, gignĕre, genui, genĭtum ; act. *to beget, to produce.*

Glacies, glaciēi ; fem. *ice.*

Gloria, gloriæ ; fem. *glory.*

Glorior, gloriāri, gloriātus sum ; dep. *to boast.*

Græcus, græca, græcum ; (like bonus ;) *Græcum.*

Grammatica, grammaticæ ; fem. *grammar.*

Gratia, gratiæ ; fem. *favour, sake, cause.*

Gratus, grata, gratum ; gen. grati ; *grateful, acceptable.*

Gravis, gravis, grave ; gen. gravis ; *heavy.*

Grecia, Greciæ ; fem. *Greece.*

Grotius, Grotii ; masc. *Grotius*, a distinguished German author, who flourished about two hundred years ago.

Gubernacŭlum, gubernacŭli ; neut. *the helm of a ship.*

Habeo, habēre, habui, habĭtum ; act. *to have, to esteem, to reckon.* But the translation must depend upon the noun which it governs, as, habēre oratiōnem, *to deliver an oration.*

Hæreo, hærēre, hæsi, hæsum ; neut. *to stick.*

Hannĭbal, Hannibălis ; masc. *Hannibal*, a Carthagenian general.

Hector, Hectōris ; masc. *Hector*, a Trojan general.

Hei ! inter. *ah !*

Helĕna, Helĕnæ ; fem. *Helen*, a Grecian woman of great beauty, whom Paris carried to Troy ; and thence arose the Trojan war.

Helŏtes, Helŏtum ; masc. *the Helots*, a people whom the Spartans held in slavery.

Herè ; adv. *yesterday ;* sometimes spelled *her*ì.

Heu ! inter. *alas !*

Hic ; adv. *here, in this place.*

Hic, hæc, hoc ; *this.* See page 44.

Hiems, hiĕmis ; fem. *winter.*

Hispania, Hispaniæ ; fem. *Spain*, a country in the south of Europe.

Homērus, Homēri ; masc. *Homer*, the father of Greek epic poetry.

Homicidium, homicidii ; neut. *murder.*

Homo, homĭnis ; com. *a man* or *woman.* Homĭnes, plur. *mankind.*

Honestas, honestātis ; fem. *honesty.*

Honestus, honesta, honestum ; gen. honesti ; *noble, honest.*

Honor, honōris ; masc. *honour.*

Honōro, honorāre, honorāvi, honorātum ; act. *to honour.*

Hora, horæ ; fem. *an hour.*

Horatius, Horatii ; masc. *Horace*, the great lyric poet of the Romans.

Hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum ; dep. *to exhort, to advise.*

Hortus, horti ; masc. *a garden.*

Hostis, hostis ; masc. *an enemy.*

Hūc ; adv. *hither, here.*

Ibi ; adv. *there, in that place.*

Iconium, Iconii ; neut. *Iconium*, a town in Asia Minor.
Ictus, ictûs ; masc. *a blow.*
Idem, eădem, idem ; gen. ejusdem ; *the same.*
Igĭtur ; conj. *therefore.*
Ignārus, ignāra, ignārum ; gen. ignāri ; *ignorant.*
Ignis, ignis ; masc. *fire.*
Ignōtus, ignōta, ignŏtum ; (like bonus ;) *unknown.*
Ille, illa, illud ; gen. illĭus ; *he, she, it.* See page 43.
Illecĕbra, illecĕbræ ; fem. *an enticement.*
Illustris, illustris, illustre ; gen. illustris ; *illustrious.*
Illyrius, Illyrii ; masc. *an Illyrian.*
Imāgo, imagĭnis ; fem. *an image.*
Imĭtor, imitāri, imitātus sum ; dep. *to imitate.*
Immĕmor, immĕmor, immĕmor ; gen. immemŏris ; *unmindful.*
Immineo, imminēre, imminui ; neut. *to threaten.*
Immortālis, immortālis, immortāle ; gen. immortālis ; *immortal.*
Immutātus, immutāta, immutātum ; gen. immutāti ; adj. *unchanged*
Impendeo, impendēre, impendi, impensum ; neut. *to hang over, to threaten.*
Imperātor, imperatōris ; masc. *a commander.*
Imperiōsus, imperiōsa, imperiōsum ; gen. imperiōsi ; *imperious, that can rule or govern.*
Imperium, imperii ; neut. *command, government.*
Impĕro, imperāre, imperāvi, imperātum ; act. *to command, to reign.*
Impertio, impertīre, impertīvi, impertītum ; act. *to impart.*
Impĕtus, impĕtûs ; masc. *an attack.*
Impiĕtas, impietātis ; fem. *impiety.*
Impleo, implēre, implēvi, implētum ; act. *to fill.*
Incēdo, incedĕre, incessi, incessum ; neut. *to walk.*
Inceptum, incepti ; neut. *a beginning, an undertaking.*
Incertus, incerta, incertum ; gen. incerti ; *uncertain.*
Inclȳtus, inclȳta, inclȳtum ; *renowned, famous.*
Incŏlo, incolĕre, incolui, incultum ; act. *to inhabit.*
Incommŏdum, incommŏdi ; neut. *a loss, an inconvenience.*
Incredibĭlis, incredibĭlis, incredibĭle ; (like mitis ;) *incredible, not to be believed.*
Indè ; adv. *thence, from that place.*
India, Indiæ ; fem *India*, the south eastern part of Asia.

Indigeo, indigēre, indigui; (no supine;) neut. *to want.*
Indignus, indigna, indignum; adj. *unworthy, undeserving.*
Indŏles, indŏlis; fem. *a disposition.*
Induo, induĕre, indui, indūtum; act. *to cover, to clothe.*
Industria, industriæ; fem. *industry.*
Inertia, inertiæ; fem. *sluggishness.*
Infinītus, infinīta, infinītum; gen. infinīti; *infinite.*
Inflammo, inflammāre, inflammāvi, inflammātum; act. *to inflame.*
Ingenium, ingenii; neut. *the mind, the talents, the disposition.*
Ingens, ingens, ingens; gen. ingentis; *great.*
Ingredior, ingrĕdi, ingressus sum; dep. *to enter.*
Inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum; gen. inimīci; *hostile, inimical.*
Initium, initii; neut. *a beginning.*
Injuria, injuriæ; fem. *an injury.*
Inopia, inopiæ; fem. *want.*
Inops, inops, inops; gen. inŏpis; *poor, destitute of.*
Insidiæ, insidiārum; fem. plur. *snares, an ambush.*
Insipiens, insipientis; adj. *foolish.*
Insŭla, insŭlæ; fem. *an island.*
Insum, inesse, infui; neut. *to be in.*
Intentus, intenta, intentum; gen. intenti; *intent upon.*
Interdīco, interdicĕre, interdixi, interdictum; act. *to interdict, to*
prohibit, to forbid.
Interea; adv. *in the mean time.*
Interficio, interficĕre, interfēci, interfectum; act. *to slay.*
Interpres, interprĕtis; com. *an interpreter.*
Interprĕtor, interpretāri, interpretātus sum; dep. *to explain.*
Intersum, interesse, interfui; neut. *to be present.*
Intervenio, intervenīre, intervēni, interventum; act. *to intervene, to*
put an end to.
Invenio, invenīre, invēni, inventum; act. *to invent, to find.*
Invideo, invidēre, invīdi, invīsum; neut. *to envy.*
Invidia, invidiæ; fem. *envy.*
Invīsus, invīsa, invīsum; gen. invīsi; *odious, hated.*
Ipse, ipsa, ipsum; gen. ipsius; pron. *he, she, it.*
Īra, īræ; fem. *anger.*
Irātus, irāta, irātum; (like bonus;) *angry*
Irretio, irretīre, irretīvi, irretītum: act. *to entangle.*

Irrideo, irridēre, irrīsi, irrīsum ; act. *to laugh at, to deride.*
Is, ea, id ; *he, she, it.* See page 44.
Isocrătes, Isocrătis ; masc. *Isocrates*, a Grecian philosopher.
Iste, ista, istud ; gen. istius ; pron. *this, that.*
Ita ; adv. *so, in that manner.*
Italia, Italiæ ; fem. *Italy*, a country in the south of Europe.
Iter, itinĕris ; neut. *a journey.*
Itĕrum ; adv. *again.*
Jam ; adv. *now.*
Joannes, Joannis ; masc. *John.*
Juba, jubæ ; fem. *a mane ;* juba leōnis ; *a lion's mane.*
Jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum ; act. *to command.*
Judex, judĭcis ; com. *a judge.*
Judicium, judicii ; neut. *judgment, a trial.*
Judĭco, judicāre, judicāvi, judicātum ; act. *to judge.*
Jugurtha, Jugurthæ ; masc. *Jugurtha*, a king of Numidia.
Julius Cæsar, Julii Cæsăris ; masc. *Julius Cæsar*, a Roman general.
Jungo, jungĕre, junxi, junctum ; act. *to join.*
Junius, Junii ; masc. *June.*
Juno, Junōnis ; fem. *Juno*, the queen of the goddesses.
Jupĭter ; gen. Jovis ; dat. Jovi ; acc. Jovem ; voc. Jupĭter ; abl. Jove ; masc. *Jupiter*, the greatest of the heathen deities ; sometimes means *the air*, as he was the god of the heavens.
Juro, jurāre, jurāvi, jurātum ; act. *to swear.*
Jus, juris ; neut. *right, law, justice.*
Justitia, justitiæ ; fem. *justice.*
Justus, justa, justum ; gen. justi ; *just.*
Juvĕnis, juvĕnis ; com. *a youth.*
Juvo, juvāre, juvi, jutum ; act. *to help, to do good.*
Labium, labii ; neut. *a lip.*
Labor, labi, lapsus sum ; dep. *to fall.*
Labor, labōris ; masc. *labour.*
Lac, lactis ; neut. *milk.*
Lacedæmon, Lacedæmŏnis ; fem. *Lacedæmon*, a city of Greece.
Lacertus, lacerti ; masc. *an arm.*
Lacrȳma, lacrȳmæ ; fem. *a tear.*
Lætus, læta, lætum ; adj. *joyful, glad.*
Lana, lanæ ; fem. *wool.*

Lanātus, lanāta, lanātum; gen. lanāti; *woolly, bearing wool.*
Largior, largīri, largītus sum; dep. *to give liberally, to lavish.*
Largĭter; adv. *largely, much.*
Lateo, latēre, latui; neut. *to be concealed.*
Latro, latrōnis; masc. *a robber.*
Latus, latĕris; neut. *the side.*
Laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum; act. *to praise*
Laus, laudis; fem. *praise.*
Lavinium, Lavinii; neut. *Lavinium*, a town in Italy.
Lectio, lectiōnis; fem. *a lesson.*
Legātus, legāti; masc. *an ambassador.*
Legio, legiōnis; fem. *a legion, a band of soldiers.*
Lego, legĕre, legi, lectum; act. *to read.*
Lenis, lenis, lene; gen. lenis; *kind, soft, gentle.*
Leo, leōnis; masc. *a lion.*
Lepĭdus, lepĭda, lepĭdum; gen. lepĭdi; *witty, smart.*
Lepus, lepŏris; masc. *a hare.*
Lesbos, Lesbi; fem. *Lesbos*, an island in the Ægean sea.
Lethālis, lethālis, lethāle; gen. lethālis; *deadly.*
Lex, legis; fem. *a law.*
Liber, libri; masc. *a book.*
Liberalĭtas, liberalitātis; fem. *liberality, generosity.*
Libĕri, liberōrum; masc. plur. *children.*
Libĕro, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātum; act. *to liberate, to set free.*
Libīdo, or lubīdo, lubidĭnis; fem. *desire, pleasure, criminal appetite.*
Licet; imper. present tense; *it is lawful.*
Licet; conj. *although.*
Limen, limĭnis; neut. *a threshold of a door.*
Lingua, linguæ; fem. *a language.*
Linquo, linquĕre, liqui, lictum; act. *to leave.*
Lis, litis; fem. *a strife, a dispute.*
Litĕra, litĕræ; fem. *a letter;* in the plural, *writings, learning, literature.*
Litus, litŏris; neut. *the sea shore.*
Loco, locāre, locāvi, locātum; act. *to place, to let* or *lease.*
Locŭples, locŭples, locŭples; gen. locuplētis; *rich.*
Locus, loci; masc. *a place;* plural, loci *and* loca, locōrum; neut.

Longitūdo, longitudĭnis ; fem. *length.*
Longus, longa, longum ; gen. longi ; *long.*
Loquor, loqui, locūtus *or* loquūtus sum ; dep. *to speak.*
Lubet ; imper. *it pleaseth,* same as libet.
Lubrĭcus, lubrĭca, lubrĭcum ; adj. *smooth, slippery.*
Luceo, lucēre, luxi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to shine.*
Ludo, ludĕre, lusi, lusum ; neut. *to play.*
Luna, lunæ ; fem. *the moon.*
Lupus, lupi ; masc. *a wolf.*
Lusitania, Lusitaniæ ; fem. *Portugal,* or rather a part of that country now called Portugal.
Lux, lucis ; fem. *light.*
Luxuria, luxuriæ ; fem. *luxury.*
Macĕdo, Macedŏnis ; masc. *a Macedonian.*
Macedonia, Macedoniæ ; fem. *Macedonia.*
Magister, magistri ; masc. *a master.*
Magistrātus, magistrātus ; masc. *magistracy, a magistrate.*
Magnitūdo, magnitudĭnis ; fem. *size, magnitude.*
Magnus, magna, magnum ; (like bonus ;) *great.* See page 66.
Majestas, majestātis ; fem. *majesty ;* also, *crimes against the state, treason.*
Majŏres, majōrum ; plural, masc. *ancestors.*
Malè ; adv. *badly, wickedly.*
Maledīco, maledīcere, maledixi, maledictum ; act. *to revile.*
Malefacio, malefacĕre, malefēci, malefactum ; act. *to do an ill, to revile, to abuse.*
Malum, mali ; neut. *evil.*
Malus, mala, malum ; (like bonus ;) *bad.* See page 66.
Mandātum, mandāti ; neut. *a command.*
Manè ; adv. *early in the morning.*
Maneo, mānēre, mansi, mansum ; neut. and act. *to remain, to wait for.*
Manus, manūs ; fem. *the hand.*
Marcus Antonius, Marci Antonĭi ; masc. *Mark Antony,* a Roman.
Margarīta, margarītæ ; fem. *a pearl.*
Mare, maris ; neut. *the sea.*
Marinus, marīna, marīnum ; gen. marīni ; *marine, relating to the sea.*

Mater, matris ; fem. *a mother.*

Mausōlus, Mausōli ; masc. *Mausolus*, a king of Caria, whose monument, called the Mausolēum, was reckoned among the seven wonders of the world.

Maxĭmus, maxĭma, maxĭmum ; gen. maxĭmi ; *the greatest.* See p. 40.

Me ; *me ;* acc. *and* abl. of ego ; *I.* See page 41.

Mecænas, Mecænātis ; masc. *Mecænas*, a Roman knight.

Medius, media, medium ; gen. medii ; *the middle, common.*

Meipsum ; *me myself ;* compounded of me, *me ;* and ipsum, *myself ;* from ipse : declined like *ego*, and *ipse*, separately.

Mel, mellis ; neut. *honey.*

Membrāna, membrānæ ; fem. *a membrane.*

Memĭni ; defective verb, perfect tense, with the signification of a present tense ; *I remember ;* inf. *meminisse ;* imper. *memento, mementōte.*

Memor, memor, memor ; gen. memŏris ; *mindful.*

Memŏro, memorāre, memorāvi, memorātum ; act. *to make mention of, to mention.*

Menelāus, Menelāi ; masc. *Menelaus*, a king of Sparta.

Mens, mentis ; fem. *the mind.*

Mensis, mensis ; masc. *a month.*

Merces, mercēdis ; fem. *a reward.*

Meridies, meridiēi ; masc. *mid-day.*

Merum, meri ; neut. *wine.*

Merx, mercis ; fem. *merchandise.*

Messis, messis ; fem. *a harvest.*

Metallum, metalli ; neut. *a metal.*

Metellus, Metelli ; masc. *Metellus*, a Roman consul.

Metus, metûs ; masc. *fear.*

Meus, mea, meum ; gen. mei ; adj. pron. *my, mine.*

Miles, milĭtis ; masc. *a soldier.*

Mille *and* millia ; adj. plural, ind. in the singular ; in the plural, millia, millium, millĭbus ; *a thousand.*

Milo, Milōnis ; masc. *Milo*, a Roman who killed Clodius, and who was defended by Cicero.

Miltiădes, Miltiădis ; masc. *Miltiades*, an Athenian general.

Mina, minæ ; fem. *a pound.*

Minæ, minārum ; fem. plur. *threats.*

Minĭmè ; adv. *least of all, not at all;* super. of parvè *or* parum, which see.

Minĭmus, minĭma, minĭmum ; (super. of parvus ;) *the least.* See page 40.

Minor, minări, minātus sum ; dep. *to threaten.*

Minor, minor, minus ; gen. minōris ; (comp. of parvus ;) *less.* See page 40.

Mirabĭlis, mirabĭlis, mirabĭle ; gen. mirabĭlis ; *wonderful.*

Miracŭlum, miracŭli ; neut. *a wonder, a miracle.*

Mirus, mira, mirum ; gen. miri ; *wonderful.*

Miser, miserа, miserum ; gen. miseri ; *miserable.*

Miserandus, miseranda, miserandum ; gen. miserandi ; *to be pitied, lamentable.*

Misereor, miserēri, misertus *and* miserĭtus sum ; dep. *to pity.*

Miseresco, misercscĕre ; neut. *to pity ;* no perfect nor supine.

Mitis, mitis, mite ; gen. mitis ; *meek, mild, merciful.*

Mitto, mittĕre, misi, missum ; act. *to send.*

Moděror, moderări, moderātus sum ; dep. *to govern, to moderate.*

Modestia, modestiæ ; fem. *moderation, sobriety, modesty.*

Modestus, modesta, modestum ; gen. modesti ; *moderate, modest.*

Mœnia, mœnium ; neut. *walls ;* used only in the plural.

Molestia, molestiæ ; fem. *trouble, vexatiousness.*

Molestus, molesta, molestum ; gen. molesti ; *troublesome.*

Molo, Molōnis ; masc. *Molo,* a Rhodian orator.

Moneo, monēre, monui, monĭtum ; act. *to admonish.*

Monĭtor, monitōris ; masc. *an adviser.*

Mons, montis ; masc. *a mountain.*

Morbus, morbi ; masc. *a disease.*

Morior, mori *and* morīri, mortuus sum ; dep. *to die.*

Moror, morări, morātus sum ; dep. *to delay.*

Morōsus, morōsa, morōsum ; gen. morōsi ; *peevish, cross.*

Mors, mortis ; fem. *death.*

Mortālis, mortālis, mortāle ; gen. mortālis ; *mortal ;* when not joined with a noun it means *a mortal ;* that is, *a man.*

Moveo, movēre, movi, motum ; act. *to move.*

Mox ; adv. *presently.*

Muliēbris, muliēbris, muliēbris ; gen. muliēbris ; *effeminate.*

Mulier, muliĕris ; fem. *a woman.*

Multitūdo, multitudĭnis ; fem. *a multitude.*
Multŭm ; adv. *much ;* also multŏ, *by much.*
Multus, multa, multum ; gen. multi ; *much, many.* See page 40.
Mundus, mundi ; masc. *the world.*
Munio, munīre, munii *and* munīvi, munītum ; act. *to fortify.*
Munītus, munīta, munītum ; gen. munīti ; part. *fortified.*
Munus, munĕris ; neut. *a gift.*
Murus, muri ; masc. *a wall.*
Musa, musæ ; fem. *a muse.*
Muto, mūtāre, mutāvi, mutātum ; act. *to change.*
Nam ; conj. *for.*
Narratio, narrationis ; fem. *a narration.*
Narro, narrāre, narrāvi, narrātum ; act. *to relate.*
Nascor, nasci, natus sum ; dep. *to be born.*
Natio, natiōnis ; fem. *a nation.*
Natūra, natūræ ; fem. *nature, disposition.*
Natus, nati ; masc. *a son.*
Natus, nata, natum ; gen. nati ; perf. participle from nascor ; *descended, born.*
Nauta, nautæ ; masc. *a sailor, a mariner.*
Navālis, navāle, navāle ; gen. navālis ; *naval.*
Navis, navis ; fem. *a ship.*
Neapŏlis, Neapŏlis ; fem. *Naples,* a city of Italy.
Ne ; adv. *not.*
Nec ; conj. *neither, nor.*
Neco, necāre, necāvi, necātum ; act. *to kill.*
Neglĭgens, neglĭgens, neglĭgens ; gen. negligentis ; *careless, negligent.*
Neglĭgo, negligĕre, neglexi, neglectum ; act. *to neglect.*
Negotium, negotii ; neut. *a thing, an affair, business.*
Nemo, nemĭnis ; com. *no one.*
Neptūnus, Neptūni ; masc. *Neptune,* the god of the sea.
Neque ; conj. *neither.*
Nescius, nescia, nescium ; adj. *not knowing, ignorant.*
Niger, nigra, nigrum ; gen. nigri ; *black.*
Nihil ; noun, ind. *nothing ;* sometimes contracted into *nil.*
Nihĭlum, nihĭli ; neut. *nothing.*
Nimis ; adv. *too much.*

Ninus, Nini ; masc. *Ninus*, the first king of the Assyrians.
Nisi ; conj. *unless.*
No, nāre, nāvi, nātum ; neut. *to swim.*
Nobĭlis, nobilior, nobilissĭmus ; *noble, nobler, noblest.*
Nocens, nocens, nocens ; gen. nocentis ; adj. *hurtful.*
Noceo, nocēre, nocui, nocĭtum ; act. *to hurt.*
Nomen, nomĭnis ; neut. *a name.*
Non ; adv. *not.*
Nonus, nona, nonum ; gen. noni ; *the ninth.*
Nos, nostrum *or* nostri ; *we, of us, &c.* See page 41.
Nosco, noscĕre, novi, notum ; act. *to know.*
Noster, nostra, nostrum ; gen. nostri ; *our.*
Novĭtas, novitātis ; fem. *novelty, newness.*
Novus, nova, novum ; gen. novi ; *new.*
Nox, noctis ; fem. *night.*
Nubes, nubis ; fem. *a cloud.*
Nudo, nudāre, nudāvi, nudātum ; act. *to deprive.*
Nullus, nulla, nullum ; gen. nullĭus ; *no one.* See page 33.
Numantia, Numantiæ ; fem. *Numantia*, a city in Spain.
Numantīni, Numantinōrum ; masc. *the Numantines*, a people of ancient Spain.
Numen, numĭnis ; neut, *a nod, power, authority, divine influence.*
Nummus, nummi ; masc. *a piece of money.*
Nunc ; adv. *now.*
Nuncio, nunciāre, nunciāvi, nunciātum ; act. *to announce, to tell ;* also written nuntio.
Nunquam ; adv. *never.*
Nuntius, nuntii ; masc. *a messenger.*
O ! inter. *oh !*
Obedio, obedīre, obedīvi, obedītum ; neut. *to obey.*
Obliviscor, oblivisci, oblītus sum ; dep. *to forget.*
Observatio, observatiōnis ; fem. *notice, observation, regard.*
Obses, obsĭdis ; masc. and fem. *a hostage.*
Obsum, obesse, obfui ; neut. *to be hurtful, to hurt, to injure.*
Obtineo, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentum ; act. *to obtain.*
Obviàm ; adv. *in the way, to meet.*
Occido, occidĕre, occĭdi, occĭsum ; act. *to kill.*
Occido, occidĕre, occĭdi, occāsum ; neut. *to fall down, to set*

Occulto, occultāre, occultāvi, occultātum; act. *to hide, to keep secret,* or *conceal.*

Occultus, occulta, occultum; gen. occulti; *hidden, secret.*

Occumbo, occumbĕre, occubui, occubĭtum; neut. *to fall down, to yield.*

Occŭpo, occupāre, occupāvi, occupātum; act. *to seize, to occupy.*

Octāvus, octāva, octāvum; gen. octāvi; *the eighth.*

Octo; adj. ind. *eight.*

Octoginta; ind. adj. *eighty.*

Ocŭlus, ocŭli; masc. *an eye.*

Odi; a defective verb, *I hate,* or *have hated.* It is used only in this tense, the perfect, and those derived from it.

Odōror, odorāri, odorātus sum; dep. *to smell.*

Officio, officĕre, offēci, offectum; act. *to hinder, to be hurtful to.*

Officium, officii; neut. *a duty, office.*

Olympius, Olympia, Olympium; (like bonus;) *Olympian,* an epithet of Jupiter.

Omnis, omnis, omne; gen. omnis; *all, every.*

Onĕro, onerāre, onerāvi, onerātum; act. *to load.*

Onus, onĕris; neut. *a weight, a burden.*

Onustus, onusta, onustum; gen. onusti; *laden* or *loaded with.*

Opĕra, opĕræ; fem. *toil, labour.*

Opĕror, operāri, operātus sum; dep. *to labour.*

Opīmus, opīma, opīmum; gen. opīmi; *rich, fat.*

Opīnio, opiniōnis; fem. *expectation, opinion.*

Opis; gen. opem; acc. ope; abl. (these three cases only are used in the singular,) fem. *power, assistance;* plur. opes, opum, opĭbus; *wealth, strength.*

Opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum; gen. opportūni; *convenient, favourable.*

Opprĭmo, opprimĕre, oppressi, oppressum; act. *to oppress.*

Oppugno, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātum; act. *to assault, to fight against.*

Optabĭlis, optabĭlis, optabĭle; gen. optabĭlis; *desirable.*

Optĭmè; adv. *best;* compared thus; benè, melĭùs, optĭmè.

Optĭmus; super. *best.* See page 40.

Opus; subst. indecl. *need, occasion.*

Opus, opĕris; neut. *a work.*

Ora, orę; fem. *a coast, a shore.*
Oraculum, oraculi; neut. *an oracle.*
Oratio, orationis; fem. *an oration.*
Orator, oratoris; masc. *an orator.*
Orbo, orbare, orbavi, orbatum; act. *to deprive.*
Oriens, orientis; masc. *the east,* or *rising of the sun.*
Orior, oriri, ortus sum; dep. *to rise.*
Ornatè; adv. *elegantly.*
Ornatus, ornatûs; masc. *dress, an ornament.*
Oro, orare, oravi, oratum; act. *to speak, to ask, to pray.*
Ortus, ortûs; masc. *birth, descent.*
Ortus, orta, ortum; participial adj. *risen, proceeding from.*
Ostendo, ostendĕre, ostendi, ostensum *and* ostentum; act. *to shew, to exhibit.*
Ostento, ostentare, ostentavi, ostentatum; act. *to show, to display, to boast.*
Otium, otii; neut. *leisure, rest.*
Paco, pacare, pacavi, pacatum; act. *to appease, to subdue.*
Padus, Padi; masc. *the river Po.*
Palleo, pallēre, pallui; (no supine;) neut. *to be pale.*
Panis, panis; masc. *bread.*
Pango, pangĕre, panxi, pegi *and* pepĭgi, pactum; act. *to strike.*
Par, par, par; gen. paris; *equal;* pares, used as a noun, *equals.*
Parco, parcĕre, peperci, parsum *and* parcĭtum; neut. *to spare.*
Parens, parentis; com. *a parent.*
Pareo, parēre, parui, parĭtum; neut. *to obey.*
Pario, parĕre, pepĕri, partum; act. *to produce, to bring forth.*
Paris, Parĭdis; masc. *Paris,* a celebrated Trojan.
Parĭter; adv. *equally, in a like degree.*
Paro, parare, paravi, paratum; act. *to prepare, to procure, to acquire.*
Partio, partīre, partīvi, partītum; act. *to divide.*
Parvè *or* parum; adv. *a little, too little;* comp. minus; *less;* super. minimè; *least.*
Parvus, parva, parvum; gen. parvi; *small, little.* See page 40.
Passus, passûs; masc. *a pace.*
Pateo, patēre, patui; neut. *to be open, to be manifest.*
Pater, patris; masc. *a father.*

Patĕra, patĕræ ; fem. *a goblet.*
Patiens, patiens, patiens ; gen. patientis ; *patient, able to endure.*
Patientia, patientiæ ; fem. *patience.*
Patria, patriæ ; fem. *a country.*
Patrimonium, patrimonii ; neut. *an inheritance.*
Patrōnus, patrōni ; masc. *a patron, a defender.*
Pauci, paucæ, pauca ; gen. paucōrum ; used only in the plural, *few.*
Paulŭlus, paulŭla, paulŭlum ; gen. paulŭli ; *a little.*
Pauper, pauper, pauper ; gen. paupĕris ; *poor, destitute;* when used without a nom. *poor persons, the poor.*
Paupertas, paupertātis ; fem. *poverty.*
Pavo, pavōnis ; masc. *a peacock.*
Pax, pacis ; fem. *peace.*
Pecco, peccāre, peccāvi, peccātum ; neut. *to sin, to offend, to transgress.*
Pecunia, pecuniæ ; fem. *money.*
Pecus, pecŏris ; neut. *a flock of sheep, cattle.*
Pellis, pellis ; fem. *a skin.*
Pendo, pendĕre, pependi, pensum ; act. *to weigh, to value.*
Perăgo, peragĕre, perēgi, peractum ; act. *to perfect, to finish.*
Perăgro, peragrāre, peragrāvi, peragratum ; act. *to travel over.*
Percutio, percutĕre, percussi, percussum ; act. *to strike.*
Perdo, perdĕre, perdĭdi, perdĭtum ; *to lose, to consume, to destroy* part. pass. perdĭtus ; *lost, wretched, miserable.*
Peregrinor, peregrināri, peregrinātus sum ; dep. *to travel over.*
Pereo, perīre, perii, perĭtum ; neut. *to perish, to die.*
Perfectio, perfectiōnis ; fem. *perfection.*
Perfĕro, perferre, pertŭli, perlātum ; *to carry, to bear, to convey.*
Perfĭdus, perfĭda, perfĭdum ; *false, perfidious.*
Perfugio, perfugĕre, perfūgi, perfugĭtum ; neut. *to fly for shelter.*
Pergo, pergĕre, perrexi, perrectum ; neut. *to go, to proceed.*
Periculum, periculi ; neut. *danger.*
Perītus, perīta, perītum ; gen. periti ; *skilled, expert.*
Perluceo, perlucēre, perluxi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to shine through, to be very bright.*
Perniciōsus, perniciōsa, perniciōsum ; gen. perniciōsi ; *injurious, hurtful.*
Perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum ; gen. perpetui ; *perpetual.*

Persæ, Persārum; *the Persians.*
Perseus, Persei; masc. *Perseus*, a son of Philip, king of Macedon.
Persevĕro, perseverāre, perseverāvi, perseverātum; act. *to persevere.*
Persĭcus, Persĭca, Persĭcum; adj. *Persian.*
Persuadeo, persuadēre, persuāsi, persuasum; act. *to persuade.*
Perturbo, perturbāre, perturbāvi, perturbātum; act. *to disturb.*
Pervenio, pervenīre, pervēni, perventum; neut. *to come to.*
Pes, pedis; fem. *a foot.*
Pestis, pestis; fem. *a pest, pestilence, destruction.*
Peto, petĕre, petīvi *and* petii, petītum; act. *to desire, to seek, to go to.*
Petrus, Petri; masc. *Peter.*
Pharsalia, Pharsaliæ; fem. *Pharsalia*, a province of Thessaly, famous for a battle between Cæsar and Pompey; the town is *Pharsālus.*
Pharsalĭcus, Pharsalĭca, Pharsalĭcum; *of Pharsalia, Pharsalian*; Pharsalia was a part of Thessaly in Greece.
Pharus, Phari; fem. *Pharus*, an island in the Mediterranean sea.
Philippus, Philippi; masc. *Philip*, king of Macedon.
Philosophia, philosophiæ; fem. *philosophy.*
Philosŏphus, philosŏphi; masc. *a philosopher.*
Phœbus, Phœbi; masc. *Apollo.*
Phœnīces, Phœnīcum; masc. plur. *the Phœnicians.*
Phryges, Phrygum; masc. *the Phrygians*, a people of Asia Minor.
Piĕtas, pietātis; fem. *piety.*
Pingo, pingĕre, pinxi, pictum; act. *to paint.*
Piræus, Piræi; masc. *Pirœus*, the port of Athens.
Piscor, piscāri, piscātus sum; dep. *to fish.*
Pius, pia, pium; gen. pii; *pious.*
Placeo, placēre, placui, placĭtum; neut. *to please.*
Plato, Platōnis; masc. *Plato*, an Athenian philosopher.
Plenus, plena, plenum; gen. pleni; *full.*
Plurĭmus; super. of multum; *most:* plurĭmi; *very many.* See page 40.
Plus, pluris; comp. of multum; *more.* See page 40.
Pœna, pœnæ; fem. *punishment.*
Polliceor, pollicēri, pollicĭtus sum; dep. *to promise.*
Pomarium, pomarii; neut. *an orchard*
Pompeius, Pompeii; masc. *Pompey*, a great Roman general.
Pomum, pomi; neut *an apple.*

Pono, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum ; act. *to place, to pitch.* (P. castra, *to pitch the camps.*)

Popŭlus, popŭli ; masc. *the people.*

Porrĭgo, porrigĕre, porrexi, porrectum ; act. *to reach, to extend.*

Portus, portûs ; masc. *a harbor, port,* or *haven.*

Posco, poscĕre, poposci ; (no supine ;) *to ask, to demand.*

Posidonius, Posidonii ; masc. *Posidonius,* a Rhodian philosopher.

Possessio, possessiōnis ; fem. *possession.*

Possum, posse, potui ; neut. *to be able.*

Posteritas, posteritātis ; fem. *posterity.*

Postĕrus, postĕra, postĕrum ; adj. *coming after, following, next* (Comp. posterior, super. postrēmus.) Postĕri, posterōrum ; *posterity, descendants.*

Postquàm ; adv. *after that.*

Postridie ; adv. *on the next day.*

Postŭlo, postulāre, postulāvi, postulātum ; act. *to demand.*

Potentia, potentiæ ; fem. *power.*

Potestas, potestātis ; fem. *power.*

Potio, potiōnis ; fem. *drink, a draught.*

Potior, potīri, potītus sum ; dep. *to possess, to enjoy.*

Præceptum, præcepti ; neut. *a precept, a command.*

Præcipuè ; adv. *especially.*

Præclārus, præclāra, præclārum ; gen. præclāri ; *distinguished, excellent, famous.*

Præda, prædæ ; fem. *prey, booty.*

Prædĭtus, prædĭta, prædĭtum ; gen. prædĭti ; *endued with*

Prædor, prædāri, prædātus sum ; dep. *to plunder.*

Prælium, prælii ; neut. *a battle.*

Præluceo, prælucēre, præluxi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to surpass.*

Præmium, præmii ; neut. *a reward.*

Præsidium, præsidii ; neut. *a guard, a defence.*

Præsideo, præsidēre, præsēdi, præsessum ; neut. *to preside over.*

Præstans, præstans, præstans ; gen. præstantis ; *excellent.*

Præstat, præstābat ; impers. *it is better.*

Præsum, præesse, præfui ; neut. *to be before,* or *over, to command*

Præterĭtus, præterĭta, præterĭtum ; adj. *passed, gone by.*

Prætor, prætōris ; masc. a *a prætor ;* a magistrate of Rome, next in honor to the consul.

Pravus, prava, pravum; gen. pravi; *wicked, depraved.*

Precis; dat. preci; acc. precem; abl. prece; fem. *a prayer:* it has but these four cases in the singular: in the plural—preces, precum, precĭbus; *prayers, supplications.*

Pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum; (like bonus;) *precious, valuable.*

Pretium; neut. *price.*

Pridiè; adv. *the day before.*

Primus, prima, primum; super. *first;* comp. prior; *the former:* no positive.

Princeps, princĭpis; com. properly an adj. meaning, *first, chief;* but often used as a noun, meaning, *a prince, an emperor, a general.*

Principium, principii; neut. *a beginning.*

Priusquàm; adv. *before that.*

Privo, privāre, privāvi, privātum; act. *to deprive.*

Probĭtas, probitātis; fem. *goodness, probity.*

Probo, probāre, probāvi, probātum; act. *to prove, to try.*

Proboscis, proboscĭdis; fem. *a proboscis, an elephant's trunk.*

Probus, proba, probum; gen. probi; *good, virtuous.*

Procĕdo, procedĕre, processi, processum; neut. *to proceed.*

Procul; adv. *far, far off.*

Prodigiūm, prodigii; neut. *a prodigy.*

Proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; dep. *to go, to advance.*

Proh! inter. *oh!*

Promitto, promittĕre, promīsi, promissum; act. *to promise.*

Promptus, prompta, promptum; gen. prompti; *ready.*

Propè; adv. *near.*

Propōno, proponĕre, proposui, propositum; act. *to proclaim, to propose.*

Propior, propior, propius; gen. propiōris; comp. *nearer;* super. proxĭmus; *nearest.* This adjective has no positive. The comparative and superlative are derived from the adverb, propè, *near.*

Proprius, propria, proprium; gen. proprii; *proper, peculiar, one's own.*

Prospĭcio, prospicĕre, prospexi, prospectum; act. *to view, to provide for.*

Prosum, prodesse, profui, (compounded of *pro* and *sum* and varied like sum;) *to do good, to be serviceable to.*

Provĭdus, provĭda, provĭdum; gen. provĭdi; *foreseeing, wise.*

Provincia, provinciæ ; fem. *a province.*
Proxĭmè ; adv. *next, very near ;* comparative, *propriùs.*
Prudens, prudens, prudens ; gen. prudentis ; *prudent.*
Prudentia, prudentiæ ; fem. *prudence.*
Ptolemæus, Ptolemæi ; masc. *Ptolemy,* one of the kings of Egypt.
Pudor, pudōris ; masc. *modesty.*
Puella, puellæ ; fem. *a girl.*
Puer, puĕri ; masc. *a boy.*
Puerīlis, puerilis, puerile ; gen. puerīlis ; *childish, puerile.*
Pugio, pugiōnis ; masc. *a dagger.*
Pugna, pugnæ ; fem. *a battle.*
Pugno, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātum ; neut. *to fight, to resist.*
Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum ; gen. pulchri ; *beautiful, good, excellent.*
Punio, punīre, punīvi, punītum ; act. *to punish.*
Puto, putāre, putāvi, putātum ; act. *to think, to consider.*
Pyrămis, pyramĭdis ; fem. *a pyramid.*
Pyrenæi, Pyrenæōrum ; masc. plur. *the Pyrenees mountains,* dividing France from Spain.
Quæro, quærĕre, quæsīvi, quæsītum ; act. *to ask, to seek.*
Qualis, qualis, quale ; gen. qualis ; *of what kind, what sort.*
Quàm ; conj. *than.*
Quamōbrem ; adv. *wherefore.*
Quamvis ; conj. *although, though.*
Quanquam ; conj. *although.*
Quantùm ; adv. *as much as, how much! how!*
Quantus, quanta, quantum ; gen. quanti ; *how great, how much.*
Quartus, quarta, quartum ; gen. quarti ; *the fourth.*
Quatuor ; indecl. *four.*
Que ; conj. *and :* always joined to the end of a word.
Queror, queri, questus sum ; dep. *to complain.*
Qui, quæ, quod ; *who, which, that.* See page 46.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam, *or* quiddam ; gen. cujusdam ; *a certain thing* or *person.*
Quidem ; adv. *truly, indeed.*
Quies, quiētis ; fem. *rest, quiet.*
Quinque ; adj. *five.*
Quis, quæ, quod ; *who, which, what?*

Quisque, quæque, quodque *or* quidque; gen. cujusque; pronoun; *every one.*
Quò; adv. *whither.*
Quondam; adv. *in time past, formerly.*
Quousque; adv. *how long.*
Quum; adv. *when.*
Rapio, rapĕre, rapui, raptum; act. *to pull, to carry off.*
Ratio, ratiōnis; fem. *reason.*
Rebello, rebellāre, rebellāvi, rebellātum; neut. *to rebel.*
Recipio, recipĕre, recēpi, receptum; act. *to receive.*
Recordor, recordāri, recordātus sum; dep. *to remember.*
Rectè; adv. *rightly, correctly.*
Rectus, recta, rectum; gen. recti; *right, correct, virtuous.*
Reddo, reddĕre, reddĭdi, redditum; act. *to restore, to return.*
Redeo, redīre, redīvi, *and* redii, redītum; neut. *to return.*
Refĕro, referre, retŭli, relātum; act. *to carry back, to relate.*
Refūto, refutāre, refutāvi, refutātum; act. *to disprove, to restrain.*
Regina, reginæ; fem. *a queen.*
Regio, regiōnis; fem. *a region, a tract of country.*
Regno, regnāre, regnāvi, regnātum; neut. *to reign.*
Regnum, regni; neut. *a kingdom.*
Rego, regĕre, rexi, rectum; act. *to rule.*
Religio, religiōnis; fem. *religion.*
Relinquo, relinquĕre, relīqui, relictum; act. *to leave, to forsake.*
Remeo, remeāre, remeāvi, remeātum; neut. *to return.*
Reminiscor, reminisci, (no part.) dep. *to remember.*
Remunĕro, remunerāre, remunerāvi, remunerātum; act. *to reward, to recompense.*
Remus, remi; masc. *an oar.*
Repăro, reparāre, reparāvi, reparātum; act. *to renew, to repair.*
Reperio, reperīre, repĕri, repertum; act. *to find.*
Repĕto, repetĕre, repetīvi *or* repetii, repetītum; act. *to ask or demand back* or *again.*
Repleo, replēre, replēvi, replētum act. *to fill.*
Res, rei; fem. *an affair, a thing*, and sometimes, *property, wealth.*
Responsum, responsi; neut. *an answer.*
Respublĭca, reipublĭcæ; fem. *a republic.*
Rex, regis; masc. *a king.*

Rhenus, Rheni ; masc. *the river Rhine.*

Rhetor, rhetŏris ; masc. *a rhetorician,* one who teaches rhetoric.

Rhodănus, Rhodăni ; masc. *the Rhone,* a river of France.

Rhodus, Rhodi ; fem. *Rhodes,* an island in the Mediterranean.

Rideo, ridēre, risi, risum ; neut. *to laugh.*

Ridicŭlus, ridicŭla, ridicŭlum ; gen. ridicŭli ; *ridiculous, worthy to be laughed at.*

Rivus, rivi ; masc. *a brook, a river.*

Rogo, rogāre, rogāvi, rogātum ; act. *to ask.*

Roma, Romæ ; fem. *Rome,* a city of Italy, and once the mistress of the world.

Romāni, Romanōrum ; plur. masc. *the Romans.*

Romānus, Romāna, Romānum ; (like bonus ;) *a Roman.*

Romŭlus, Romŭli ; masc. *Romulus,* the founder of Rome.

Rosa, rosæ ; fem. *a rose.*

Rotundus, rotūnda, rotundum ; gen. rotundi ; *round.*

Ruo, ruĕre, rui, ruĭtum ; neut. *to rush.*

Rus, ruris ; neut. *the country :* in the plural, rura, *farms, fields*

Sæpè ; adv. *often.*

Salus, salūtis ; fem. *health.*

Salvus, salva, salvum ; gen. salvi ; *safe.*

Sanguinolentus, sanguinolenta, sanguinolentum ; gen. sanguinolenti ; *bloody.*

Sanguis, sanguĭnis ; fem. *blood.*

Sano, sanāre, sanāvi, sanātum ; act. *to heal* or *cure.*

Sanus, sana, sanum ; gen. sani ; *sound, whole.*

Sapiens, sapiens, sapiens ; gen. sapientis ; *wise.*

Sapientia, sapientiæ ; fem. *wisdom.*

Sapio, sapĕre, sapīvi *or* sapui ; neut. and act. *to know, to be wise.*

Sappho, Sapphûs *and* Sapphōnis ; fem. *Sappho,* a celebrated Greek poetess.

Sardinia, Sardiniæ ; fem. *Sardinia,* an island in the Mediterranean

Sardis, Sardis ; fem. *Sardis,* a city of Lydia in Asia Minor.

Satăgo, satagĕre, satēgi ; (no supine ;) neut. *to be busy, to have enough to do.*

Satis ; adv. *enough, sufficient.*

Satisfacio, satisfacĕre, satisfēci, satisfactum ; act. *to satisfy, to perform.*

Saturnus, Saturni; masc. *Saturn*, one of the heathen deities.
Satus, sata, satum; gen. sati; part. *descended from.*
Satus, satûs; masc. *a sowing, planting.*
Scelerātus, scelerāta, scelerātum; gen. scelerāti; *wicked*
Scelestus, scelesta, scelestum; gen. scelesti; *wicked.*
Scelus, scelĕris; neut. *a crime, wickedness.*
Schola, scholæ; fem. *a school.*
Scientia, scientiæ; fem. *knowledge.*
Scio, scīre, scivi, scitum; act. *to know.*
Scipio, Scipiōnis; *Scipio*, a Roman general.
Scitor, scitāri, scitātus sum; dep. *to ask, to inquire.*
Scopŭlus, scopŭli; masc. *a rock.*
Scribo, scribĕre, scripsi, scriptum; act. *to write.*
Scytha, Scythæ; masc. *the Scythians*, a people in the north of Asia.
Secundum; prep. *after, as to, according to.*
Secus; prep. *by.*
Sed; conj. *but.*
Sedes, sedis; fem. *a seat, a dwelling, a habitation.*
Sejungo, sejungĕre, sejunxi, sejunctum; act. *to separate.*
Seligo, seligĕre, selēgi, selectum; act. *to select, to choose.*
Semen, seminis; neut. *seed.*
Semper; adv. *always.*
Senātus, senātûs; masc. *the senate.*
Senātûsconsultum, senātûsconsulti; neut. *a decree of the senate.*
Senectus, senectūtis; fem. *old age.*
Senex, senĭcis *and* senis; *old;* comp. senior; *older:* no super.
Sensus, sensûs; masc. *sense*, the faculty of perceiving external objects.
Sententia, sententiæ; fem. *an opinion, a sentence.*
Septem; adj. ind. *seven.*
Septingentesĭmus, septingentesĭma, septingentesĭmum; *the seven hundredth.*
Septuaginta; adj. ind. *seventy.*
Sepulchrum, sepulchri; neut. *a sepulchre.*
Sequor, sequi, secūtus sum; dep. *to follow.*
Serius, seria, serium; gen. serii; *serious, grave, important*
Sermo, sermōnis; fem. *a speech, conversation.*
Sero, serĕre, sevi, satum; act. *to sow.*
Serus, sera, serum; gen. seri; *late.*

Servio, servīre, servīvi, servītum ; neut. *to serve, to obey.*
Servitium, servitii ; neut. *servitude, slavery.*
Servus, servi ; masc. *a servant.*
Sex ; ind. *six.*
Si ; conj. *if.*
Sicilia, Siciliæ ; fem. *Sicily*, an island in the Mediterranean.
Silentium, silentii ; neut. *silence.*
Simia, simiæ ; fem. *an ape.*
Simīlis, simīlis, simīle ; gen. simīlis ; *like, similar.*
Simul ; adv. *together, in company with, at the same time.*
Sincerĭtas, sinceritātis ; fem. *sincerity, candour.*
Sincērus, sincēra, sincērum ; adj. *pure, unmixed, sincere.*
Sisto, sistĕre, steti, statum ; neut. *to stop, to stand still.*
Sitis, sitis ; fem. *thirst.*
Sobrīnus, sobrīni ; masc. *a cousin.*
Societas, societātis ; fem. *society, an alliance.*
Socrātes, Socrātis ; masc. *Socrates*, a celebrated Grecian philosopher
Sodālis, sodālis ; com. *a companion.*
Sol, solis ; masc. *the sun.*
Solāmen, solaminis ; neut. *comfort.*
Solatium, solatii ; neut. *solace, comfort.*
Soleo, solēre, solĭtus sum ; neut. pass. *to be accustomed.*
Solitūdo, solitudĭnis ; fem. *solitude.*
Solon, Solōnis ; masc. *Solon*, one of the seven wise men of Greece.
Solum, soli ; neut. *the soil.*
Solum ; adv. *only, alone.*
Solus, sola, solum ; gen. solīus ; *alone, only.*
Solvo, solvĕre, solvi, solūtum ; act. *to loose, to free, to pay.*
Somnus, somni ; masc. *sleep.*
Sors, sortis ; fem. *lot.*
Sparta, Spartæ ; *Sparta*, one of the most powerful of the Grecian states.
Spartāni, Spartanōrum ; masc. plur. *the Spartans*, a people of Greece.
Specto, spectāre, spectāvi, spectātum ; act. *to behold, to see, to perceive.*
Specus, specūs ; masc. *a cave.*
Spes, spei ; fem. *hope.*
Spirĭtus, spirĭtūs ; masc. *the wind, breath.*

Spiro, spirāre, spirāvi, spirātum ; act. *to blow, to breathe.*
Splendeo, splendēre, splendui ; neut. (no supine,) *to shine.*
Splendor, splendōris ; masc. *splendour, brightness.*
Spolio, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātum ; act. *to spoil, to plunder, to deprive.*
Spolium, spolii ; neut. *spoil,* taken from an enemy, *plunder.*
Statua, statuæ ; fem. *a statue.*
Statuo, statuĕre, statui, statūtum ; act. *to resolve.*
Stella, stellæ ; fem. *a star.*
Stirps, stirpis ; com. *the root of a tree, the race* or *lineage of a family.*
Sto, stāre, steti, statum ; neut. *to stand.*
Studeo, studēre, studui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to study, to favour.*
Studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum ; gen. studiōsi ; *studious, desirous*
Studium, studii ; neut. *study, concern, employment.*
Stultus, stulta, stultum ; gen. stulti ; *foolish.*
Suadeo, suadēre, suasi, suasum ; act. *to persuade.*
Suavis, suavis, suave ; (like mitis ;) *sweet, pleasant.*
Subdūco, subdūcĕre, subduxi, subductum ; act. *to take away, to withdraw.*
Subĭtò ; adv. *suddenly.*
Subĭtus, subĭta, subĭtum ; gen. subĭti ; *sudden.*
Succenseo, succensēre, succensui ; (no supine ;) neut. *to be angry*
Succurro, succurrĕre, succurri, succursum ; act. *to help.*
Sui ; *of himself, of herself, of itself.* See page 42.
Sulla, Sullæ ; *Sylla,* a Roman general.
Sum, esse, fui ; neut. *to be.*
Summus, summa, summum ; gen. summi ; super. *highest :* positive supĕrus ; *high :* comp. superior ; *higher.*
Superior, superior, superius ; gen. superiōris ; comp. *higher.*
Supersedeo, supersedēre, supersēdi, supersessum ; neut. *to forbear*
Supersum, superesse, superfui ; neut. *to abound, to remain.*
Supĕrus, supĕra, supĕrum ; gen. supĕri ; *high.*
Supervenio, supervenīre, supervēni, superventum ; neut. *to come upon*
Surdus, surda, surdum ; gen. surdi ; *deaf.*
Surgo, surgĕre, surrexi, surrectum ; neut. *to arise.*
Suus, sua, suum ; gen. sui ; pro. *his, hers, its.*
Syracūsæ, Syracusārum ; fem. plur. *Syracuse,* the capital of Sicily

Syria, Syriæ ; fem. *Syria*, a country of Asia.
Taceo, tacēre, tacui, tacĭtum ; neut. *to keep silence.*
Tacĭtus, tacĭta, tacĭtum ; gen. tacĭti ; part. and adj. *silent.*
Talentum, talenti ; neut. *a talent*, a coin worth one thousand dollars.
Talis, talis, tale ; adj. *such, such like.*
Tám ; conj. *as, such.*
Tandem ; adv. *at length, at last.*
Tango, tangĕre, tetĭgi, tactum ; act. *to touch.*
Tantò ; adv. *so much, by so much ;* properly the ablative of tantus.
Tantus, tanta, tantum ; gen. tanti ; *so great, so much.*
Taurus, tauri ; masc. *a bull.*
Tego, tegĕre, texi, tectum ; act. *to cover.*
Tegumentum, tegumenti ; neut. *a covering.*
Temerĭtas, temeritātis ; fem. *rashness.*
Templum, templi ; neut. *a temple.*
Tempus, tempŏris ; neut. *time.*
Tendo, tendĕre, tetendi *and* tendi, tensum *and* tentum ; act. *to extend, to stretch, to direct one's course, to march, to go.*
Tenĕbræ, tenebrārum ; fem. plur. *darkness.*
Teneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum ; act. *to hold fast.*
Tenuis, tenuis, tenue ; gen. tenuis ; *slender, thin.*
Tergum, tergi ; neut. *the back.*
Terra, terræ ; fem. *the earth.*
Terribĭlis, terribĭlis, terribĭle ; gen. terribĭlis ; *terrible.*
Terror, terrōris ; masc. *fear, terror.*
Testimonium, testimonii ; neut. *a testimony, a witness.*
Testūdo, testudĭnis ; fem. *a tortoise.* This name was also applied to a warlike wooden machine, covered with hides, which resembled the back of *a tortoise*, and under the cover of which the enemy approached the walls of a city in order to beat them down.
Thebæ, Thebārum ; *Thebes*, a city of Greece.
Thesaurus, thesauri ; masc. *a treasure.*
Thessalia, Thessaliæ ; fem. *Thessaly*, a country of Greece.
Thetis, Thetĭdis *and* Thetĭdos ; fem. *Thetis*, one of the heathen sea-goddesses.
Thrax, Thracis ; masc. *a Thracian.*
Tiberis, Tiberis ; masc. *Tiber*, a river in Italy.
Tiberius, Tiberii ; masc. *Tiberius*, a Roman emperor.

Timeo, timēre, timui ; neut. and act. *to fear.*
Timĭdus, timĭda, timĭdum ; gen. timĭdi ; *timid.*
Timor, timōris ; masc. *fear.*
Tolĕro, tolerāre, tolerāvi, tolerātum ; act. *to bear.*
Tonĭtru ; neut. ind. *thunder.*
Totus, tota, totum ; gen. totĭus ; *the whole.* See page 33.
Tragœdia, tragœdiæ ; fem. *tragedy.*
Tranquillĭtas, tranquillitātis ; fem. *stillness, tranquillity.*
Transeo, transīre, transīvi, transĭtum ; act. *to go, to pass.*
Transporto, transportāre, transportāvi, transportātum ; act. *to transport.*
Tribuo, tribuĕre, tribui, tribūtum ; act. *to give.*
Tridens, tridentis ; masc. *a trident,* an instrument with three prongs, the sceptre of the sea-gods.
Triumphus, triumphi ; masc. *a triumph.*
Troja, Trojæ ; fem. *Troy,* a city in Asia, near the Ægæan sea, famous for having been besieged ten years by the Greeks.
Trojanus, Trojana, Trojanum ; (like bonus ;) *a Trojan,* or inhabitant of Troy.
Tu, tui ; *you.* See page 42.
Tui ; pron. gen. *of you.* See page 42.
Tumŭlus, tumŭli ; masc. *a little hill.* Hence it means *a grave,* as after burial the dirt was thrown up over the body in the shape of a hill.
Tunc ; adv. *then, at that time.*
Turbo, turbāre, turbāvi, turbātum ; act. *to disturb, to disorder, to throw into confusion.*
Turma, turmæ ; fem. *a troop.*
Turris, turris ; fem. *a tower.*
Tutor, tutāri, tutātus sum ; dep. *to defend.*
Tutus, tuta, tutum ; gen. tuti ; *safe.*
Tuus, tua, tuum ; gen. tui ; pron. *thy*
Ubertas, ubertātis ; fem. *richness.*
Ubi ; adv. *where.*
Ubique ; adv. *every where.*
Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum ; dep. *to avenge.*
Ullus, ulla, ullum ; gen. ullĭus ; *any, any one.*
Ultĭmus, ultĭma, ultimum ; *farthest ;* comparative, ulterior ; *farther*

Ultra, prep. *beyond.*
Ultro, adv. *willingly, of his own accord.*
Umbra, umbræ; fem. *a shadow.*
Undecentum; adj. ind. *ninety-nine.* Compounded of unus, de, *and* centum, *one from a hundred.*
Unquam, adv. *at any time, ever.*
Unus, una, unum; gen. unius; *one, some one.*
Urbs, urbis; fem. *a city.*
Uro, urĕre, ussi, ustum; act. *to burn.*
Ursus, ursi; masc. *a bear.*
Urtica, urticæ; fem. *a thorn, a nettle.*
Usus, usûs; masc. *use, experience;* also, *necessity, need.*
Ut; conj. *that, as:* when an adv. *how!*
Uterque, utrăque, utrumque; gen. utriusque; *both, each.*
Utĭca, Utĭcæ; fem. *Utica,* a city of Africa.
Utĭlis, utĭlis, utĭle; gen. utĭlis; *useful.*
Utĭnam; adv. of wishing; *O that! would!*
Utor, uti, usus sum; dep. *to use, to have the benefit of.*
Uva, uvæ; fem. *a grape.*
Uxor, uxōris; fem. *a wife.*
Vacuus, vacua, vacuum; gen. vacui; *void of, free from.*
Væ! interj. *alas!*
Valeo, valēre, valui, valĭtum; neut. *to be well.*
Vanĭtas, vanitātis; fem. *vanity.*
Varietas, varietātis; fem. *a variety.*
Varius, varia, varium; gen. varii; *various.*
Vasto, vastāre, vastāvi, vastātum; act. *to waste, to destroy.*
Vecordia, vecordiæ; fem. *madness.*
Vehementer; adv. *vehemently, exceedingly.*
Velocĭtas, velocitātis; fem. *velocity, swiftness.*
Vel; conj. *or, either.*
Velox, velox, velox; gen. velōcis; *swift.*
Velŭti; adv. *even as.*
Venător, venatōris; masc. *a hunter.*
Vendo, vendĕre, vendĭdi, vendĭtum; act. *to sell.*
Veneo, venīre, venii; (no supine;) neut. *to be sold.*
Venia, veniæ; fem. *pardon.*
Venio, venīre, veni, ventum; neut. *to come.*

Ventus, venti ; masc. *the wind.*
Verber, verbĕris ; neut. *a lash, a stroke, a stripe.*
Verbum, verbi ; neut. *a word.*
Verè ; adv. *truly.*
Vergo, vergĕre ; (no perfect nor supine;) neut. *to incline, to bend to*
Verĭtas, veritātis ; fem. *truth.*
Vero ; conj. *truly, indeed.*
Verres, Verris ; masc. *Verres*, a Roman prætor in Sicily, whom Cicero accused of peculation.
Versus ; prep. *towards.*
Verto, vertĕre, verti, versum ; act. *to turn.*
Verus, vera, verum ; gen. veri ; *true.*
Vescor, vesci ; no perfect or participle ; dep. *to feed.*
Vestor, vestra, vestrum ; gen. vestri ; *your.*
Vestio, vestīre, vestīvi, vestītum ; act. *to clothe.*
Vestis, vestis ; fem. *a garment.*
Vetus, vetus, vetus ; gen. vetĕris ; *ancient.*
Via, viæ ; fem. *a way.*
Vicīnus, vicīni ; masc. *a neighbour.*
Video, vidēre, vidi, visum ; act. *to see.*
Vigĭlo, vigilāre, vigilāvi, vigilātum ; act. *to watch.*
Viginti ; adj. ind. *twenty.*
Villa, villæ ; fem. *a villa* or *cottage.*
Vincio, vincīre, vinxi, vinctum ; act. *to bind.*
Vinco, vincĕre, vici, victum ; act. *to conquer.*
Vincŭlum, vincŭli ; neut. *a chain.*
Viŏlo, violāre, violāvi, violātum ; act. *to force, to violate.*
Vir, viri ; masc. *a man.*
Virgilius, Virgilii ; *Virgil*, the greatest of the Latin poets.
Virĭdis, virĭdis, virĭde ; gen. virĭdis ; *green.*
Virtus, virtūtis ; fem. *virtue, valour.*
Vis ; gen. vis ; acc. vim ; voc. vis ; abl. vi ; fem. *strength, power.* In the singular it has but these five cases ; in the plural it is regular ; vires, virium, virĭbus, &c.
Visus, visûs ; masc. *sight.*
Vita, vitæ ; fem. *life.*
Vitiōsus, vitiōsa, vitiōsum ; (like bonus ;) *bad, vicious.*
Vitis, vitis ; fem. *a vine.*

Vitium, vitii; neut. *vice, a crime.*
Vito, vitāre, vitāvi, vitātum; act. *to avoid, to shun.*
Vivo, vivĕre, vixi, victum; neut. *to live, to have life.*
Voco, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum; act. *to call, to summon.*
Volo, volāre, volāvi, volātum; neut. *to fly.*
Volo, velle, volui; (no supine;) irreg. *to wish, to be willing.* The participle, volens, is often used adverbially, *willingly.*

Ind. pres.	*Sing.* volo,	*I wish;*	*Plur.* volŭmus,	*we wish;*
	vis,	*thou wishest;*	vultis,	*you wish;*
	vult,	*he wishes;*	volunt,	*they wish.*

Voluntas, voluntātis; fem. *the will, the pleasure.*
Voluptas, voluptātis; fem. *pleasure.*
Vox, vocis; fem. *a voice.*
Vulnĕro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum; act. *to wound.*
Vulnus, vulnĕris; neut. *a wound.*
Vultus, vultûs; masc. *the countenance.*
Xantippe, Xantippes; fem. 1st. declension; *Xantippe,* the wife of Socrates.

Harvard College Library

FROM

Tufts College